11) Publication number:

0 151 826

A1

(12)

# **EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION**

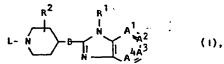
21 Application number: 84201851.7

2 Date of filing: 13.12,84

(51) Int. Cl.4: C 07 D 471/04

C 07 D 401/06, C 07 D 401/12 C 07 D 401/14, C 07 D 405/14 C 07 D 409/14, C 07 D 417/14 C 07 D 513/04, C 07 D 519/00 C 07 D 487/04, C 07 D 473/00

- 30 Priority: 09.01.84 US 569369 13.11.84 US 671135
- Date of publication of application: 21.08.85 Bulletin 85/34
- Designated Contracting States:
   AT BE CH DE FR GB IT LI LU NL SE
- 7) Applicant: JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA N.V. Turnhoutsebaan 30 B-2340 Beerse(BE)
- (7) Inventor: Janssens, Frans Eduard Tinstraat 79 B-2830 Bonheiden(BE)
- (72) Inventor: Kennis, Ludo Edmond Josephine Guido Gezellenstraat 50 B-2300 Turnhout(BE)
- (7) Inventor: Hens, Jozef Francis Guido Gezellestraat 50 B-2260 Nijlen(BE)
- 72 Inventor: Torremans, Joseph Leo G. Lijsterstraat 11 B-2340 Beerse(BE)
- (72) Inventor: Diels, Gaston Stanislas M. Oosteinde 12 B-2380 Ravels(BE)
- (64) 4-(Bicyclic heterocyclyl)-methyl and -hetero-piperidines.
- (57) Novel 4-[(bicyclic heterocyclyl)methyl and -hetero]piperidines of formula



wherein B is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, S, SO or SO<sub>2</sub>; the pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts and the possible stereochemically isomeric forms thereof, which compounds are antiallergic agents, pharmaceutical compositions containing such compounds as an active ingredient and processes for preparing the said compounds and compositions

**JAB 436** 

-1-

5

10

4-[(BICYCLIC HETEROCYCLYL)-METHYL AND -HETERO]-PIPERIDINES.

15

## Background of the invention:

In U.S. Patent No. 4,219,559 there are described a number of N-heterocyclyl-4-piperidinamines having the formula

20

$$1-N \xrightarrow{r} \begin{bmatrix} r \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} r^2 \\ N \end{bmatrix}$$
  $(r^3)_n$ 

which compounds are useful as antihistaminic agents.

The compounds of the present invention differ from the prior art compounds essentially by the nature of the 4-piperidinyl substituent which is invariably a bicyclic heterocyclyl-methyl or -hetero group and by the fact that the compounds of the present invention are not only potent histamine-antagonists but also potent serotonin-antagonists.

### Description of the preferred embodiments:

This invention is concerned with novel 4-[bicyclic heterocyclyl-methyl and -hetero]-piperidines which may structurally be represented by the formula

$$L-N \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow A^{\frac{1}{N}} A^$$

5

the pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts and the possible stereochemically isomeric forms thereof, wherein:  ${\tt A}^1{=}{\tt A}^2{=}{\tt A}^3{=}{\tt A}^4 \text{ is a bivalent radical having the formula}$ 

wherein one or two hydrogen atoms in said radicals (a-1) - (a-5) may, 15 each independently from each other, be replaced by halo, lower alkyl, lower alkyloxy, trifluoromethyl or hydroxy;

R<sup>1</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, Ar<sup>1</sup> and lower alkyl substituted with one or two Ar<sup>1</sup> radicals;

20 R<sup>2</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and lower alkyl;

B is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, S, SO or SO<sub>2</sub>;

L is a member selected from the group consisting of a radical of formula

25 
$$L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-T-C_{s}H_{2s}$$
 (b-1); and

a radical of formula

$$L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-T^{1}-N \qquad (b-2)$$

30

wherein one or two hydrogen atoms in the bivalent radical -C H<sub>2</sub> - may, each independently from each other, be replaced by halo, hydroxy, mercapto, isothiocyanato, isocyanato, lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, Ar<sup>1</sup>, Ar<sup>1</sup>O-, Ar<sup>1</sup>S-, Ar<sup>1</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>-, or NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>5</sup>; and

n is 0 or the integer 1 or 2;

r and s are, independently from each other, 0 or an integer of from 1 to 6 inclusive;

5

said Y being O, S, NR<sup>3</sup> or a direct bond;

10 X being O, S, CH-NO<sub>2</sub> or NR<sup>4</sup>;

Z being O, S, NR<sup>5</sup> or a direct bond; and
said R<sup>3</sup> being hydrogen, lower alkyl, (Ar<sup>2</sup>)lower alkyl, 2-lower
alkyloxy-1,2-dioxoethyl or a radical of formula -C(=X)-R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>
being hydrogen, lower alkyl, Ar<sup>2</sup>, Ar<sup>2</sup>-lower alkyl, lower alkyloxy,

15 Ar<sup>2</sup>-lower alkyloxy, mono- or di(lower alkyl)amino, Ar<sup>2</sup>-amino,
Ar<sup>2</sup>-lower alkylamino or Ar<sup>2</sup>-lower alkyl(lower alkyl)amino;
said R<sup>4</sup> being hydrogen, lower alkyl, cyano, nitro, Ar<sup>2</sup>-sulfonyl,
lower alkylsulfonyl, lower alkylcarbonyl or Ar<sup>2</sup>-carbonyl; and
said R<sup>5</sup> being hydrogen or lower alkyl;

20

wherein L<sup>1</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen; halo; hydroxy; lower alkyloxy; lower alkylthio; cyano; mercapto; isocyanato; isothiocyanato; Ar<sup>1</sup>; Ar<sup>1</sup>-carbonyl; Ar<sup>1</sup>-sulfonyl; lower alkylsulfonyl; cycloalkyl being optionally substituted with up to two substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of lower alkyl, cyano and Ar<sup>2</sup>; [10,11-dihydro-5H-dibenzo[a,d]cyclohepten-5-ylidene]methyl; Het; and furan substituted with substituted lower alkyl; said substituted lower alkyl being lower alkyl substituted with a member selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, mercapto, lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, aminolower alkylthio, Ar<sup>2</sup>-oxy and a radical of formula

wherein: t is 0 or an integer of from 1 to 6 inclusive; and R<sup>7</sup> is hydrogen or lower alkyl; provided that: when in said radical of formula (c) t is 0, then Z or Y is a direct bond; and

where r is 0, L<sup>1</sup> may also be lower alkenyl, Ar<sup>1</sup>-lower alkenyl or lower alkyl substituted with two lower alkyloxy radicals; and

where r is 0 and T is  $NR^3$ , or T is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-Y$  or  $T^1$  is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-$ , 10 L may also be amino, lower alkylamino or  $Ar^1$ -amino; and

where r is 0, and T is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-Y$  or  $T^1$  is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-$ ,  $L^1$  may also be nitro;

15 said Het being an optionally substituted five- or six-membered heterocyclic ring, being optionally condensed with an optionally substituted five- or six-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring;

### provided that:

- wherein T is -Z-C(=X)-Y- wherein Y is other than a direct bond and Z and X are each independently O or S, then r is not 0; or when L is a radical of formula (b-2) wherein L is hydrogen and wherein T is -Z-C(=X)- wherein Z and X are each independently O or S, then r is not 0;
  - ii) when L is a radical of formula (b-1) wherein L is halo, hydroxy, lower alkyloxy, mercapto, lower alkylthio, isocyanato, isothiccyanato or Het connected to C<sub>T</sub><sub>2r</sub> on a nitrogen atom, and wherein r is 0, then T is a direct bond or a radical
- 30 -C(=X)-Y-; or when L is a radical of formula (b-2) wherein L<sup>1</sup> is halo, hydroxy, lower alkyloxy, mercapto, lower alkylthio, isocyanato, isothiocyanato or Het connected to C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r</sub> on a nitrogen atom, and wherein r is 0, then T<sup>1</sup> is a radical -C(=X)-;

- iii) when L is a radical of formula (b-1) wherein T is Y, said Y being other than a direct bond, or wherein T is -Z-C(=X)-Y-, wherein Y is other than a direct bond, then s is not 0;
- wherein Ar is a member selected from the group consisting of phenyl, substituted phenyl, naphthalenyl, thienyl, halothienyl, lower alkylthienyl, pyridinyl, mono- and di(lower alkyloxy)pyridinyl, pyrrolyl, lower alkylpyrrolyl, furanyl, furanyl substituted with lower alkyl, pyrazinyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, lower alkylimidazolyl;
- 10 said substituted phenyl, being phenyl substituted with up to 3 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of halo, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, trifluoromethyl, lower alkyl, lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, mercapto, amino, meno- and di(lower alkyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonyl, lower alkylsulfonyllower alkyl,
- 15 phenyllower alkylsulfonyl, phenylsulfonyllower alkyl, a radical of formula R<sup>8</sup>-C<sub>p</sub>H<sub>2p</sub>-Y-, a radical of formula R<sup>9</sup>-Z-C(=X)-Y-, and a radical of formula R<sup>10</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>Y-; wherein p is an integer of from 1 to 6 inclusive and R<sup>8</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of amino, cyano, phenyl aminocarbonyl, mono- and di(lower alkyl)amino-
- 20 carbonyl, lower alkyloxycarbonyl, phenyllower alkyloxycarbonyl,
  4-morpholinylcarbonyl, 1-piperidinylcarbonyl, 1-pyrrolidinylcarbonyl,
  and lower alkenyl; wherein R<sup>9</sup> is member selected from the group
  consisting of hydrogen, lower alkyl and Ar<sup>2</sup>; provided that, when
  R<sup>9</sup> is hydrogen and Y is other than a direct bond, then Z is not O or
  25 S; and wherein R<sup>10</sup> is lower alkyl or Ar<sup>2</sup>;

wherein Ar<sup>2</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of phenyl, substituted phenyl, thienyl and furanyl, said substituted phenyl being phenyl optionally substituted with up to three substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of

30 halo, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, trifluoromethyl, lower alkyl, lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, mercapto, amino, mono- and di(lower alkyl)amino, carboxyl, lower alkyloxycarbonyl and (lower alkyl)-CO.

As used in the foregoing definitions the term halo is generic to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo; the term "lower alkyl" is meant to include straight and branch chained saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as, for example, methyl, ethyl,

- 5 1-methylethyl, 1,1-dimethylethyl, propyl, 2-methylpropyl, butyl, pentyl, hexyl and the like; "alkyl" is meant to include lower alkyl radicals, as defined hereinabove, and the higher homologs thereof having from 7 to 10 carbon atoms; the term "lower alkenyl" is meant to include straigth and branch chained hydrocarbon radicals having from 2
- 10 to 6 carbon atoms, such as, for example, 2-propenyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 2-pentenyl and the like; the term "cycloalkyl" is generic to cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl; and "lower alkanediyl" is meant to include bivalent straight or branch chained alkanediyl radicals having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms.
- Preferred compounds within the invention are those wherein r is 0 and L is hydrogen, hydroxy, lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, mercapto, Het, Ar cyanato, isocyanato or isothiocyanato.

Particularly preferred compounds within the invention are those wherein r is 0 and  $L^1$  is as described hereinabove for the preferred 20 compounds and wherein  $R^1$  is lower alkyl substituted with one  $Ar^1$  radical.

More particularly preferred compounds within the invention are those wherein L is a radical of formula (b-1), wherein r is 0 and L<sup>1</sup> is as described hereinabove for the preferred compounds and wherein 25 R<sup>1</sup> is lower alkyl substituted with one Ar<sup>1</sup> radical.

It is evident that in the compounds of formula (I) wherein L<sup>1</sup> is Het, said Het may be unsaturated or partly or completely saturated.

The compounds of formula (I) wherein Het is a heterocycle which is substituted with a hydroxy, mercapto or amino radical may contain in 30 their structure a keto-enol tautomeric system or a vinylog system thereof, and consequently these compounds may be present in their keto form as well as their enol form.

The compounds of formula (I) can generally be prepared by reacting

. 35

a piperidine of formula (II) with a diamine of formula (III).

(III)

In (II) X1 is O, S or NH.

- W as used in the foregoing and following reaction schemes is an 10 appropriate leaving group such as, for example, halo, e.g. chloro, bromo or iodo, a sulfonyloxy group, e.g. methylsulfonyloxy or 4-methyl-phenylsulfonyloxy, and where W is connected to a -C(=X)-, -C(=X<sup>1</sup>)- or -C(=X<sup>2</sup>)- radical it may also be lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, Ar<sup>2</sup>-O-, or Ar<sup>2</sup>-S-.
- 15 The piperidine of formula (II) may in situ be generated, for example, by converting a piperidine which is substituted in its 4-position with a -B-C(=X<sup>1</sup>)-OH radical into a piperidine of formula (II) by reacting the former piperidine with thionyl chloride, phosphor trichloride, polyphosphoric acid, phosphoroxychloride and the like.
- 20 The reaction of (II) with (III) may be conducted in a suitable solvent such as, for example, a hydrocarbon, e.g., benzene, hexane, an ether, e.g., 1,1'-oxybisethane, tetrahydrofuran, a ketone, e.g., propanone, an alcohol, e.g., methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol, a halogenated hydrocarbon, e.g., trichloromethane, dichloromethane, an
- 25 acid, e.g., acetic acid, propanoic acid, N,N-dimethylformamide,
  N,N-dimethylacetamide and the like, and mixtures of such solvents.

  Depending upon the solvent and nature of W it may be appropriate to
  add an appropriate base and/or an iodide salt, preferably an alkali
  metal iodide, to the reaction mixture. Elevated temperatures may

  30 enhance the reaction rate.

The compounds of formula (I) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (V) with a piperidine of formula (IV) wherein  $E^1$  and  $E^2$  are selected so that during the reaction a radical -B-is formed.

For example, the compounds of formula (I) can be prepared by reacting a piperidine of formula (IV) wherein E<sup>1</sup> is a radical of formula -B-M with an intermediate of formula (V) wherein E<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula -W.

15 L-N B-M + W 
$$\bigwedge_{N=1}^{R^1} \bigwedge_{A^4 > A^3}^{A^1} \bigwedge_{A^3 > A^3}^{A^2}$$
 (IV-a)

In (IV-a) M is, depending upon the nature of B, hydrogen or an appropriate alkalimetal or earth alkaline metal and in (V-a) W has the previously described meaning. Additionally, the compounds of formula (I) can also be prepared by reacting a piperidine of formula (IV) wherein E<sup>1</sup> is W with an intermediate of formula (V) wherein E<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula -B-M, said W and M having the previously described meanings.

More particularly, the compounds of formula (I) wherein B is -CH<sub>2</sub>-can also be prepared by reacting a piperidine of formula (IV) wherein E<sup>1</sup> represents a radical of formula -CH<sub>2</sub>-W, (IV-c), with an

35

intermediate of formula (V) wherein  $E^2$  represents M, (V-c) or alternatively, by reacting a piperidine of formula IV, wherein  $E^1$  is a radical of formula -M, (IV-d), with an intermediate of formula (V) wherein  $E^2$  is a radical of formula -CH<sub>2</sub>-W, (V-d).

The reaction of (IV) with (V) may conveniently conducted in an appropriate solvent such as for example, an aromatic hydrocarbon, e.g., benzene, methylbenzene; an ether, e.g. 1,4-dioxane, 1,1'-oxybisethane, tetrahydrofuran and the like; a halogenated hydrocarbon, e.g. trichloromethane and the like; N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF); N,N-dimethylacetamide (DMA); and where M is hydrogen, said solvent may also be a lower alkanol, e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-butanol and the like; a ketone, e.g., 2-propanone, 4-methyl-2-pentanone and the like. In some circumstances, the addition of an appropriate base such as, for example, an alkali metal carbonate or hydrogen carbonate, sodium hydride or an organic base such as, for example, N,N-diethylethanamine or N-(1-methylethyl)-2-propanamine and/or the addition of an iodide salt, preferably an alkali metal iodide, may be appropriate. Somewhat elevated temperatures may enhance the rate of the reaction.

The compounds of formula (I) can also be derived from a l,4-dihydropyridine derivative of formula (VI) following art-known reducing procedures.

- Suitable reducing procedures are, for example, a catalytic hydrogenation in a suitable solvent, e.g. methanol, ethanol and the like, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal and the like catalysts.
- The compounds of formula (I) can also be converted into each other.

  A number of such reactions will be described hereinafter in more detail.

In order to simplify the structural representations of the compounds of formula (I) and of certain precursors and intermediates thereof the 20

$$-N \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2}$$

$$-N \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{1}$$

$$-N \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{1}$$

$$-N \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2}$$

$$-1 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2}$$

$$-1 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2}$$

$$-1 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3}$$

$$-1 \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3$$

25 represented by the symbol D.

The compounds of formula (I) wherein L is L<sup>2</sup>, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-b) can be prepared by alkylating an intermediate of formula (VII) with a compound of formula (I) 30 wherein L is Q<sup>2</sup>, said compound being represented by the formula (I-c).

$$L^{1}-Q^{1} + Q^{2}-D \longrightarrow L^{2}-D$$
35 (VII) (I-c) (I-b)

L<sup>2</sup> as defined hereinabove is a radical of formula (b-1) other then hydrogen, said radical being represented by the formula (b-1-a), or a radical of formula (b-2).

In (VII) and (I-c),  $Q^1$  and  $Q^2$  are selected so that a bivalent radical of formula (b-l-a) or (b-2) is formed during the alkylation reaction, said (b-l-a) and (b-2) having the previously described meaning.

10 For example, the compounds of formula (I-b) can be prepared by N-alkylating a piperidine of formula (I-c) wherein Q<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, said piperidine being represented by the formula (I-c-l), with a reagent of formula (VII-a)

Additionally, the compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a 20 radical of formula (b-l-a), wherein T is T<sup>2</sup>, said T<sup>2</sup> being O, S, NR<sup>3</sup> or -Z<sup>1</sup>-C(=X)-Y-, said Z<sup>1</sup> being O, S or NR<sup>5</sup>, or a radical of formula (b-2) wherein T<sup>1</sup> is T<sup>3</sup>, said T<sup>3</sup> being -Z<sup>1</sup>-C(=X)- or a direct bond, said compounds being represented by the formulae (I-b-l-a), respectively (I-b-l-b), can be prepared by alkylating a 25 piperidine of formula (I-c-2) with a reagent of formula (VII-b).

35 In (I-c-2)  $Q^{2a}$  is a radical of formula  $HT^2-C_8H_{2s}-$ ,

and  $W^1$  has the previously defined meaning of W, and where r=0, and  $S^1$  is Het or  $Ar^1$ , it may also be lower alkyloxy or lower alkylthic.

The compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula (b-l-a), wherein T is T<sup>4</sup>, said T<sup>4</sup> being O, S, NR<sup>3</sup> or -Z-C(=X)-Y<sup>1</sup>-, said Y<sup>1</sup> being O, S or NR<sup>3</sup>, and said compounds

10 being represented by the formula (I-b-2), may also be prepared by alkylating a piperidine of formula (I-c) wherein Q<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula -C<sub>S</sub>H<sub>2s</sub>-W, said piperidine being represented by the formula (I-c-3), with a reagent of formula (VII) wherein Q<sup>1</sup> is a radical of formula -C<sub>T</sub>H<sub>2r</sub>-T<sup>4</sup>H, said reagent being represented by the

15 formula (VII-c).

20

The alkylation reactions are conveniently conducted in an inert organic solvent such as, for example, an aromatic hydrocarbon, e.g., benzene, methylbenzene, dimethylbenzene, and the like; a lower alkanol, e.g., methanol, ethanol, l-butanol and the like;

25 a ketone, e.g., 2-propanone, 4-methyl-2-pentanone and the like; an ether, e.g., l,4-dioxane, l,1'-oxybisethane, tetrahydrofuran and the like; N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF); N,N-dimethylacetamide (DMA); dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO); nitrobenzene; l-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone; and the like. The addition of an appropriate base such as, for example, an alkali metal carbonate or hydrogen carbonate, sodium hydride or an organic base such as, for example, N,N-diethylethanamine or N-(l-methylethyl)-2-propanamine may be utilized to pick up the acid which is liberated during the course of the reaction. In some circumstances the addition of an iodide salt, preferably an alkali metal iodide, is appropriate. Somewhat elevated temperatures may

enhance the rate of the reaction.

The compounds of formula (I-b) can also be prepared by the reductive N-alkylation reaction of (I-c-1) with an appropriate carbonyl-compound of formula L<sup>2-a</sup>=C=O (VIII), said L<sup>2-a</sup>=C=O being a compound of formula L<sup>2</sup>-H wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- radical is oxidated to a carbonyl radical.

$$L^{2-\underline{a}} = C = 0 + (I-c-1)$$
(VIII)

10

The compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula L<sup>1</sup>-C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>-C<sub>g</sub>H<sub>2g</sub>-, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-b-3) may alternatively be prepared by the reductive N-alkylation reaction of a compound of formula (I), 15 wherein L is a radical of formula HN(R<sup>3</sup>)-C<sub>g</sub>H<sub>2g</sub>-, (I-d), with an appropriate carbonyl-compound of formula L<sup>1</sup>-(C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r-1</sub>)=0, (IX), said L<sup>1</sup>-(C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r-1</sub>)=0 being a compound of formula L<sup>1</sup>-C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r</sub>-H wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- radical is oxidated to a carbonyl radical. The compounds of formula (I-b-3) can also be prepared by the reductive N-alkylation of an amine of formula (X), with a compound of formula (I) wherein L is a radical of formula O=(C<sub>s</sub>H<sub>2s-1</sub>)-, said compound being represented by the formula (I-e), and said O=(C<sub>s</sub>H<sub>2s-1</sub>)- being a radical of formula H-C<sub>s</sub>H<sub>2s</sub>- wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- radical is oxidated to a carbonyl radical.

25

Said reductive N-alkylation reaction may conveniently be carried out by catalytically hydrogenating a mixture of the reactants in a suitable reaction-inert organic solvent according to art-known catalytic hydrogenating procedures. The reaction mixture may be 35 stirred and/or heated in order to enhance the reaction rate. Suitable

solvents are, for example, water; lower alkanols, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like; cyclic ethers, e.g.

1,4-dioxane and the like; halogenated hydrocarbons, e.g. trichloromethane and the like; N,N-dimethylformamide; dimethyl

5 sulfoxide and the like; or a mixture of 2 or more of such solvents. The term "art-known catalytic hydrogenating procedures" means that the reaction is carried out under hydrogen atmosphere and in the presence of an appropriate catalyst such as, for example, palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal and the like. In order to prevent the undesired further hydrogenation of certain functional groups in the reactants and the reaction products it may be advantageous to add an appropriate catalyst-poison to the reaction mixture, e.g., thiophene and the like.

The compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L is a radical of formula 15 (b-1-a) wherein T is Z<sup>1</sup>-C(=X<sup>2</sup>)-NH-, Z<sup>1</sup> being as previously described, X<sup>2</sup> being O or S, and said compounds being represented by the formula (I-b-4), can generally be prepared by reacting an isocyanate or isothiocyanate of formula (I-f) with a reagent of formula (XI):

20

25

The compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula (b-l-a), wherein T is -NH-C(=X<sup>2</sup>)-Y<sup>1</sup>-, Y<sup>1</sup> being as previously described, and the compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula (b-l-a), wherein T is -NH-C(=X<sup>2</sup>)- and s is 30 0, and the compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula (b-2), wherein T<sup>1</sup> is -NH-C(=X<sup>2</sup>)-, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-b-5-a), respectively (I-b-5-b) and (I-b-5-c), can be prepared by reacting an isocyanate or isothiocyanate of formula (XII) with a piperidine of formula (I-c-4), respectively 35 (I-c-1) and (I-c-5).

$$L^{1}C_{r}^{H_{2r}-N=C=X^{2}} + HY^{1}-C_{s}^{H_{2s}-D} \xrightarrow{L^{1}-C_{r}^{H_{2r}-NH-C-Y^{1}-C_{s}^{H_{2s}-D}}} L^{1}-C_{r}^{H_{2r}-NH-C-Y^{1}-C_{s}^{H_{2s}-D}}$$
(XII) (I-c-4) (I-b-5-a)

5

$$(XII) + H-D$$
 $L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-NH-C-D$  (I-b-5-b)

$$(XII) + HN \longrightarrow L^{1-C}r^{H_{2r}-NH-C-N} \longrightarrow (CH_{2r})^{1}$$

15 The reaction of (XI) with (I-f) and of (XII) with (I-c-4), respectively (I-c-1) and (I-c-5) may be conducted in a suitable reaction-inert solvent such as, for example, a hydrocarbon, e.g., benzene, a ketone, e.g., acetone, a halogenated hydrocarbon, e.g., dichloromethane, trichloromethane, an ether, e.g., l,l'-oxybisethane, 20 tetrahydrofuran and the like. Elevated temperatures may be suitable to enhance the rate of the reaction.

The compounds of formula (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula (b-l-a), wherein T is -C(=X<sup>2</sup>)-Y<sup>1</sup>-, and the compounds of 25 formula (I-b), wherein L is a radical of formula (b-l-a), wherein s is 0 and T is a radical of formula -C(=X<sup>2</sup>)-, and the compounds of formula (I-b) wherein L<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula (b-2), wherein T<sup>1</sup> is -C(=X<sup>2</sup>)-, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-b-6-a), respectively (I-b-6-b) and (I-b-6-c), may be prepared by 30 reacting a piperidine of formula (I-c-4), respectively (I-c-1) and (I-c-5) with a reagent of formula (XIII).

$$(XIII) + (I-c-1) \longrightarrow L^{1}C_{r}H_{2r}-c-D_{r}$$
 $(I-b-6-b)$ 

$$(XIII) + (I-c-5) \longrightarrow L^{1}C_{r}H_{2r}-C-N \longrightarrow C$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$

The reaction of (XIII) with (I-c-4), respectively (I-c-1) and (I-c-5) may generally be conducted following art-known esterification—or amidation reaction—procedures. For example, the carboxylic acid may be converted into a reactive derivative, e.g., an anhydride or a carboxylic acid halide, which subsequently, is reacted with (I-c-4), (I-c-1) or (I-c-5); or by reacting (XIII) and (I-c-4), respectively (I-c-1) and (I-c-5) with a suitable reagent capable of forming amides or esters, e.g., dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 2-chloro-1-methylpyridinium iodide and the like. Said reactions are most conveniently conducted in a suitable solvent such as, for example, an ether, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, a halogenated hydrocarbon, e.g. dichloromethane, trichloromethane or a polar aprotic solvent, e.g. N,N-dimethylformamide. The addition of a base, e.g. N,N-diethylethanamine may be appropriate.

The compounds of formula (I-b), wherein  $L^2$  is a radical of formula (b-l-a) wherein T is  $-Z^1-C(=X)-Y^1-$ , and the compounds of formula (I-b), wherein  $L^2$  is a radical of formula (b-l-a) wherein s is 0 and T is  $-Z^1-(C=X)-$ , and the compounds of formula (I-b), wherein  $L^2$  is a radical of formula (b-2) wherein  $T^1$  is  $-Z^1-C(=X)-$ , said compounds being represented by the formula (I-b-7-a), respectively (I-b-7-b) and (I-b-7-c), can also be prepared by reacting (XI) with (I-c-4), respectively (I-c-1) and (I-c-5) in the presence of an appropriate  $\sum_{=X}^{+X}$  generating agent.

$$(XI) + (I-c-4) + C=X \longrightarrow L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-Z^{1}-C(=X)-Y^{1}-C_{s}H_{2s}-D$$
generating agent (I-b-7-a)

$$(XI) + (I-c-1) + C=X \longrightarrow L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-Z^{1}-C(=X)-D$$
5 generating agent (I-b-7-b)

(XI) + (I-c-5) + C=X 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 L<sup>1</sup>-C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r</sub>-Z<sup>1</sup>-C(=X)-N  $\longrightarrow$  D generating agent (I-b-7-c) (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>

10 An appropriate C=X generating agent is, for example, 1,1'-thiocarbonylbis[lH-imidazole], l,l'-carbonylbis[lH-imidazole], carbonic dichloride, carbonothioic dichloride, urea, thiourea, trichloroacetyl chloride, and the like. The reacton of (XI) with (I-c-4), (I-c-1) or (I-c-5) is conveniently conducted in a suitable solvent, such as, for 15 example, a hydrocarbon, e.g., benzene, methylbenzene; an ether, e.g., 1,1'-oxybisethane, tetrahydrofuran; a halogenated hydrocarbon, e.g., dichloromethane, trichloromethane and the like. The addition of a base such as, for example, an alkali metal carbonate or hydrogen carbonate or an organic base, e.g., N,N-diethylethanamine and the like, may be 20 appropriate.

The compounds of formula (I-b) wherein L 2 is a radical of formula (b-1), wherein s is an integer of from 2 to 6 inclusive, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-g) can be prepared by reacting an appropriate alkene of formula (XIV) with a piperidine of 25 formula (I-c-l).

$$L^{1}C_{r}^{H}_{2r}^{-T-lower alkenediyl-H} + (I-c-1) \longrightarrow L^{1}C_{r}^{H}_{2r}^{-T-lower alkanediyl-D}$$
(XIV) (I-g)

The compounds of formula (I-b) wherein  $L^2$  is a radical of formula  $L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-T-C_{s},-2^{H}_{2s},-4}-CH(Y^{1}H)-CH_{2}-$ , wherein s' is an integer of from 2 to 6 inclusive, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-h) may also be prepared by reacting a reagent of formula (XV) with a piperidine of formula (I-c-1).

$$L^{1}-C_{r}^{H}_{2r}^{-T-C}_{s'-2}^{H}_{2(s'-2)}^{H} + (I-c-1) \Rightarrow L^{1}-C_{r}^{H}_{2r}^{-T-C}_{s'-2}^{H}_{2s'-4}^{-CH-CH}_{2}^{-D}$$
(XV)
(I-h)

The reactions of (XIV) with (I-c-l), and (XV) with (I-c-l) may be conducted by stirring and, if desired, heating the reactants together. The said reactions may be conducted in a suitable solvent such as, for example, an alkanone, e.g. 2-propanone, 4-methyl-2- propanone, an ether, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, l,l\*-oxybisethane, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, l-butanol, N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide and the like.

It is evident that the radical "-lower alkenyl-", the corresponding "-lower alkanediyl-"radical and the radical C<sub>2s!-2</sub>H<sub>2s!-4</sub> may bear 15 the previously described substitutions of the radical -C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>2s</sub>-.

The compounds of formula (I) wherein L<sup>1</sup> is Het, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-i), may also be prepared following procedures for preparing ring systems which are known in the art or analogous procedures thereof. A number of such cyclization procedures will be described hereinafter.

The bivalent radical K used in the description of these cyclization reactions has the following meaning:

25 
$$-c_r^{H_{2r}}-T-c_s^{H_{2s}}$$
 (d-1); or  $-c_r^{H_{2r}}-T^1-N$  (d-2);

30 and the radicals (e-1), (e-2), (e-3), (e-4), (e-5), (e-6) and (e-7) also used in the description of these cyclization reactions have the following meaning:

35

$$G^{2}$$
  $N$   $R^{16}$  (e-4),  $G^{3}$   $S$   $R^{17}$  (e-5),  $G^{4}$   $N$   $R^{19}$  (e-6), and

$$G^{5}$$
 $N$ 
 $N$ 
 $X^{2}$ 
 $(e-7)$ ; wherein

X<sup>2</sup> has the previously defined meaning; and R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>12</sup>, R<sup>13</sup>, R<sup>14</sup>, R<sup>15</sup>, R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup>, R<sup>18</sup>, R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are, each independently optional substituents of the said radicals (e-1) - (e-7) and where (e-1), (e-5) or (e-6) is connected to C H<sub>2</sub> by the nitrogen or carbon bearing R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>17</sup>, R<sup>18</sup> or R<sup>19</sup> said R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>18</sup> or R<sup>19</sup> is absent; and G<sup>1</sup>, G<sup>2</sup>, G<sup>3</sup>, G<sup>4</sup> and G<sup>5</sup>, being each independently, optionally substituted bivalent radicals, are selected so that they form, combined with the five- or six-membered heterocycle to which they are attached, a bicyclic Het-system.

For example, the compounds of formula (I-i) wherein Het is an optionally substituted imidazolyl radical, said compounds being represented by the formula (I-i-1), can be prepared by the cyclization reaction of an appropriate N-(2,2-dilower alkyloxyethyl)imidamide derivative of formula (XVI).

lower alkyl-0 c CH-NH-C-K-D 
$$\stackrel{R}{=}$$
  $\stackrel{R}{=}$   $\stackrel{R}{=$ 

35

wherein  $R^{21}$ ,  $R^{22}$  and  $R^{23}$  are each independently optional substituents of the imidazole ring.

Said cyclization reaction may conveniently be conducted in a suitable solvent in the presence of an appropriate acid such as, for example, hydrochloric, hydrobromic and the like acids. Elevated temperatures may enhance the rate of the reaction.

The compounds of formula (I-i) wherein Het is an optionally
10 substituted thiazolyl radical, being optionally condensed with a fiveor six-membered hetero- or carbocyclic ring, may be prepared by a
number of cyclization reactions, yielding, depending upon the case,
compounds which may be represented by the formula (I-i-2) or (I-i-3).

15 
$$R^{24}$$
-CH-C- $R^{25}$ +  $H_2$ N-C- $K$ -D cyclization  $R^{24}$  S  $K$ -D reaction  $R^{25}$   $N$  (XVII) (XVIII)  $R^{25}$   $R^{25}$   $N$  (I-i-2)  $R^{26}$   $R^{26}$   $R^{27}$   $R^{27}$   $R^{29}$   $R^{29}$ 

R<sup>24</sup>, R<sup>25</sup>, R<sup>26</sup> and R<sup>27</sup> are each independently optional substituents of the said thiazolyl ring, or, where in the compounds of formula (I-i-2) said thiazolyl ring is condensed with a five- or six-membered hetero- or carbocyclic ring, R<sup>24</sup> and R<sup>25</sup> taken together may form a bivalent radical of formula G<sup>3</sup>.

Further, where Het is a radical of formula (e-1), said Het may be 30 formed by condensing an intermediate (XXI) with a C=X<sup>2</sup> generating agent, e.g. urea, thiourea, 1,1'-carbonylbis[lH-imidazole], lower alkyl carbonohalidate, phosgene, thiophosgene, trichloromethyl carbonohalidate and the like.

The compounds of formula (I-i-4) wherein R<sup>11</sup> is hydrogen may additionally be prepared by cyclizing an intermediate of formula

reacting a reagent (XXIII) with an amine (XXIV).

$$G^{1} \downarrow_{C-W}^{N=C=X^{2}} + H_{2}^{N-K-D} \longrightarrow (XXII).$$

The reaction of (XXI) with the C=X<sup>2</sup> generating agent and the cyclization of (XXII) may conveniently be conducted in a suitable solvent such as, for example, an ether, e.g. 1,1-oxybisethane, tetrahydrofuran, an halogenated hydrocarbon, e.g. dichloromethane, trichloromethane, a hydrocarbon, e.g. benzene, methylbenzene, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, a ketone, e.g. 2-propanone, 4-methyl-2-pentanone, N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, or mixtures of such solvents, optionally in the presence of an appropriate base such as, for example, N,N-diethylethanamine, an alkali or earth alkaline metal carbonate or hydrogen carbonate. In order to enhance the reaction rate, it may be suitable to heat the reaction mixture.

Further, where Het is a radical of formula (e-2), said Het may be generated by cyclizing an intermediate (XXV) with an acid (XXVI) or a suitable functional derivative thereof, thus preparing a compound of

15

20

(XXIII)

formula (I-i-5). Alternatively an intermediate (XXVII) may be condensed with an aromatic amino acid or -thioacid of formula (XXVIII), preparing also a compound (I-i-5).

- The reaction of (XXV) with (XXVI) and of (XXVII) with (XXVIII) may be conducted in a suitable reaction and solvent, such as, for example, a hydrocarbon, e.g. benzene, methylbenzene, an alcohol, water. In some instances it may be appropriate to use higher temperatures in order to reduce the reaction time.
  - Where Het is a radical of formula (e-3), wherein R<sup>14</sup> is hydrogen and R<sup>15</sup> is a radical of formula R<sup>15-a</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub>-, said Het may be formed by reacting a compound (XXIX) with an appropriate acetylene derivative (XXX), thus preparing a compound of formula (I-i-6).

Additionally, where Het is a radical of formula (e-3), said Het may

be formed by reacting (XXIX) with a ketone of formula (XXXI), thus

preparing a compound of formula (I-i-7).

$$(XXIX) + O=C \xrightarrow{R^{14}}_{R^{15}} \longrightarrow \bigvee_{N-K-D}^{R^{13}}_{N-K-D}$$

(I-i-7)
The reaction of (XXIX) with (XXX) may be conducted in a suitable solvent such as, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, while the reaction of (XXIX) with (XXXI) may be conducted in a suitable solvent preferably in the presence of an organic acid such 10 as, for example, ethanedioic acid and the like. Elevated temperatures may also be appropriate to shorten the reaction time.

Additionally, where Het is a radical (e-4), said Het may be created by condensing a reagent (XXXII) with an intermediate (XXXIII), thus giving a compound (I-i-8).

15
$$G^{2} \downarrow_{N}^{NH} 2 + W^{-CH-C-K-D} \downarrow_{R}^{16}$$

$$(XXXII) \qquad (XXXIII) \qquad (I-i-8)$$

Where Het is a radical (e-5) being connected to K by the G containing ring and bearing a 2-mercaptosubstituent, said Het may be formed during the cyclization of an intermediate (XXXII) with CS<sub>2</sub>, thus preparing a compound (I-i-9).

Where Het is a radical of formula (e-6) being connected to K either

by the G<sup>4</sup> containing ring or by the imidazole ring, said Het is
formed during the condensation reaction of a reagent (XXXV) with an
intermediate (XXXVI) respectively by the cyclodesulfurization reaction
of an intermediate (XXXVII), thus preparing a compound (I-i-10)
respectively (I-i-11).

$$R^{19} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}} + R^{18} \xrightarrow{\text{HN}} G^4$$

$$5 \quad (XXXV) \quad (XXXVI)$$

$$G^4 \xrightarrow{\text{NH}-R^{18}} C$$

$$N^{19} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}} + R^{18} \xrightarrow{\text{HN}} G^4$$

$$0 \quad (I-i-10)$$

$$0 \quad R^{18} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}-R^{18}} C$$

$$0 \quad (I-i-11)$$

$$0 \quad (XXXVII)$$

$$0 \quad (XXXVII)$$

The reactions of (XXXII) with (XXXIII), of (XXXIV) with CS<sub>2</sub> and (XXXV) with (XXXVI) may conveniently conducted in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as for example one of the solvents given hereinabove for the preparation of (I-i-4) optionally in the presence of an appropriate base, e.g. one of the bases also described for the preparation of (I-i-4); higher temperatures may be used to enhance the reaction rate.

The cyclodesulfurization of (XXXVII) may be carried out by the reaction of (XXXVII) with an appropriate alkyl halide, preferably iodomethane in an appropriate reaction-inert organic solvent, e.g., a lower alkanol such as methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like. Otherwise, the cyclodesulfurization reaction may be carried out by the reaction of (XXXVII) with an appropriate metal oxide or salt in an appropriate solvent according to art-known procedures. For example, the compounds of formula (I) can easily be prepared by the reaction of (XXXVII) with an appropriate Hg(II) or Pb(II) oxide or salt, such as, for example HgO, HgCl<sub>2</sub>, Hg(OAc)<sub>2</sub>, PbO or Pb(OAc)<sub>2</sub>. In certain instances it may be appropriate to supplement the reaction mixture with a small amount of sulfur. Even so methanediimines, especially N,N'-methanetetraylbis[cyclohexanamine] may be used as cyclodesulfurizing agents.

35

30

15

20

Where Het is a radical (e-7), said Het may be formed during the condensation of an intermediate (XXXVIII) with a  $\sum C=X^2$  generating agent, following the same procedures as previously described for the preparation of (I-i-4) starting from (XXXIII).

The compounds of formula (I) can also be converted into each other following art-known procedures of functional grouptrans-formation. Some examples will be cited hereinafter.

The compounds of formula (I), wherein -B- is -S- may be converted

15 into the corresponding compounds of formula (I), wherein -B- is -SOor -SO<sub>2</sub>- by an appropriate oxidation reaction, e.g. by reacting the
former compounds with a suitable oxidating agent such as, for example,
potassium periodate, a peroxide, e.g. 3-chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic
acid, hydrogen peroxide, and the like, in a suitable solvent such as,

20 for example, an ether, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, l,l'-oxybisethane, a
hydro- carbon, e.g. benzene, a halogenated hydrocarbon, e.g.
dichloromethane, trichloromethane and the like. In the instance where
a sulfinyl is desired, said oxidation reaction is preferably conducted
at lower temperatures with approximately one equivalent of the

25 oxidating agent, while where a sulfonyl is desired, said oxidation
reaction may be conducted at room or elevated temperature with an
excess of oxidating agent.

The compounds of formula (I) having a nitro substituent can be converted into the corresponding amines by stirring and, if

30 desired, heating the starting nitro-compounds in a hydrogen-containing medium in the presence of a suitable amount of an appropriate catalyst such as, for example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, Raney-nickel and the like catalysts.

Suitable solvents are, for example, alcohols, e.g., methanol, ethanol and the like.

In an analogous procedure, the compounds of formula (I) having a cyano substituent, can be converted into the corresponding aminomethyl containing compounds.

The compounds of formula (I) having an hydroxy substituent may be converted into the corresponding halo compounds following art-known halogenating procedures, e.g., by reacting the former compounds with a suitable halogenating agent, e.g. thionyl chloride, phosphoryl chloride, phosphor trichloride, phosphor pentachloride, thionyl bromide, phosphor tribromide and the like.

The compounds of formula (I) containing an ester group may be converted into the corresponding carboxylic acids following art-known saponification procedures, e.g. by treating the said compounds with an aqueous alkaline solution or with an aqueous acidic solution.

The compounds of formula (I) containing a Het substituted with a

15 thioxo group can be converted into the corresponding oxo compounds
following art-known procedures, for example, by treating the said
thioxo containing compounds with a peroxide, e.g. hydrogen peroxide in
a suitable alkaline medium, e.g. an aqueous alkali metal hydroxide
solution which may be mixed with an organic solvent, such as, for
20 example, methanol, ethanol and the like.

The compounds of formula (I) containing an unsaturated Het can be converted into the corresponding saturated form following art-known reducing procedures, e.g. by treating the said compounds with hydrogen in the presence of a suitable catalyst such as, for example, 25 platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal an the like catalysts.

Halo atoms substituted on aryl groups may be replaced by hydrogen following art-known hydrogenolysis procedures, i.e. by stirring and, if desired, heating the starting compounds in a suitable solvent under hydrogen atmosphere in the presence of an appropriate catalyst, e.g., 30 palladium-on-charcoal and the like catalysts. Said halo atoms may also be replaced by a lower alkyloxy or a lower alkylthio substituent by reacting the starting halo-compound with an appropriate alcohol or thioalcohol or, preferably, an alkali- or earth alkaline metal salt or an appropriate alcohol or thioalcohol in a suitable solvent.

Lower alkyloxy and lower alkylthio radicals substituted on aryl may be converted into the corresponding hydroxy or thiol radicals by treating them with an aqueous acidic solution, e.g. an aqueous hydrochloric or hydrobromic solution.

- The compounds of formula (I) containing an imino group, e.g. where NR<sup>1</sup>, NR<sup>3</sup>, NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>5</sup> is NH, or an amino group, e.g. where AR<sup>1</sup>, AR<sup>2</sup> or Het is substituted with an amino group, the hydrogen atom in said imino or amino may be replaced by a suitable substituent following art-known procedures such as, for example, N-alkylation,
- 10 reductive N-alkylation, acylation and the like methods. A number of such procedures will be described hereinafter in more detail.

  For example, lower alkyl groups or substituted lower alkyl groups may be introduced by reacting the starting compounds with an appropriate N-alkylating agent following the procedures described hereinabove for
- 15 the N-alkylation reactions of (VII) with (I-c), or by reacting the starting compounds with an appropriate carbonyl-compound following the reductive N-alkylation procedures described hereinabove for the reductive N-alkylations of (I-c-l) with (VIII), (I-d) with (IX) and (I-e) with (X).
- Lower alkylcarbonyl, Ar<sup>2</sup>-carbonyl and the like groups may be introduced by reacting the starting amine with an appropriate carboxylic acid or a derivative thereof such as, for example, an acid halide, acid anhydride and the like.

Lower alkyloxycarbonyl and Ar<sup>2</sup>-oxycarbonyl groups can be
25 introduced by reacting the starting amine compound with an appropriate
carbonohalidate, e.g. ethyl carbonohalidate, phenylmethyl
carbonohalidate and the like.

Ar<sup>2</sup>-NH-CO, Ar<sup>2</sup>-NH-CS, (lower alkylamino)-CO- (lower alkylamino)-CS-, and the like groups can conveniently introduced by 30 reacting the starting amine compound with an appropriate isocyanate or isothiocyanate following the procedures described hereinabove for the preparation of (I-b-4), (I-b-5-a), (I-b-5-b) and (I-b-5-c).

The compounds of formula (I) containing a substituted nitrogen atom may be converted into the corresponding compounds of formula (I)

35 wherein said nitrogen bears a hydrogen atom following art-known

- methods for preparing N-H groups such as, for example: 0151826 1. where said nitrogen is substituted with an Ar2-CH2 group, by treating the starting compounds with hydrogen in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-oncharcoal, in an appropriate solvent;
- 2. or, where said nitrogen is substituted with a sulfonyl group, e.g. lower alkylsulfonyl and Ar 2-sulfonyl, by treating the starting compounds with an aqueous acidic solution preferably in the presence of a catalyst such as, for example, phenol, methoxybenzene and the like; 10
  - 3. or, where said nitrogen atoms are substituted with an Ar<sup>2</sup>-carbonyl group by treating the starting compounds with an aqueous basic solution, e.g. a alkali metal solution;
- 4. where said nitrogen is substituted with lower alkyloxy carbonyl or Ar 2-oxycarbonyl, by treating the starting compounds with an aqueous acidic or aqueous basic solution optionally in admixture with an organic solvent or where said nitrogen atom is substituted with Ar 2-oxycarbonyl, by catalytically hydrogenating the starting materials in a suitable solvent.
- The compounds of formula (I) containing a nitrogen atom substituted with Ar2-CH2- may be converted into the corresponding compounds where said nitrogen is substituted with lower alkyloxycarbonyl, for example by treating the former compounds with a lower alkyl carbonohalidate in the presence of a suitable solvent and, if desired, 25 in the presence of an appropriate base.

The compounds of formula (I) containing a mercapto group may be converted into the corresponding isothiocyanato containing compounds by treating the starting amino compounds with CS, in the presence of N.N!-methanetetraylbis[cyclohexanamine].

The compounds of formula (I) containing a -CH2-C(=O)- fragment can be converted into the corresponding compounds of formula (I) containing a -CH(halo)-C(=0)- fragment following art-known halogenating procedures, e.g. by treating the starting compound with a halogen.

In all of the foregoing and in the following preparations, the reaction products may be isolated from the reaction mixture and, if necessary, further purified according to methodologies generally known in the art.

The compounds of formula (I) have basic properties and, consequently, they may be converted to their therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt forms by treatment with appropriate acids, such as, for example, inorganic acids, such as hydrohalic acid, e.g. hydrochloric, hydrobromic and the like, and sulfuric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid and the like; or organic acids, such as, for example, acetic, propanoic, hydroxyacetic, 2-hydroxy-propanoic, 2-oxopropanoic, ethanedioic, propanedioic, butanedioic, (Z)-2-butenedioic, (E)-2-butenedioic, 2-hydroxybutanedioic, 2,3-dihydroxybutanedioic, 2-hydroxy-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylic, methanesulfonic, ethanesulfonic, benzenesulfonic, 4-methylbenzenesulfonic, cyclohexanesulfamic, 2-hydroxybenzoic, 4-amino-2-hydroxy-benzoic and the like acids. Conversely the salt form can be converted by treatment with alkali into the free base form.

Some intermediates and starting materials in the foregoing

preparations are known compounds which may be prepared according to art-known methodologies of preparing said or similar compounds and others are new. A number of such preparation methods will be described hereinafter in more detail.

The intermediates of formula (II), wherein B is CH<sub>2</sub>, X<sup>1</sup> is NH

25 and W is lower alkyloxy, said intermediates being represented by the formula (II-a), can be prepared by reacting a (cyanomethyl)piperidine of formula (XXXIX) with an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol and the like, in the presence of an acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid.

The intermediates of formula (IV) may be prepared by a reduction reaction of an appropriate 4-piperidinone, and, if desired, followed by an appropriate art-known groupstransformation procedure, e.g., where a compound of formula (V-b) is desired, by reacting the thus obtained alcohol with thionyl chloride, methylsulfonyl chloride and 10 the like in order to obtain an appropriate leaving group.

The intermediates of formula (VI) can be prepared by reacting an appropriate bicyclic condensed imidazole derivative with a pyridinium derivative.

(XLI)

The intermediates of formula (VII) can conveniently be prepared following art-known procedures as described in, for example, U.S.

Patent Number 4,335,127, U.S. Patent Number 4,342,870 and European Patent Publication Number 0,070,053.

From formula (I) it is evident that the compounds of this

25 invention may have several asymmetric carbon atoms in their structure.

Each of these chiral centers may be present in a R- and a

S-configuration, this R- and S-notation being in correspondence

with the rules described by R.S. Cahn, C. Ingold and V. Prelog in

Angew. Chem., Int. Ec. Engl., 5, 385, 511 (1966).

Pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula

(I) may be obtained by the application of art-known procedures.

Diastereoisomers may be separated by physical separation methods such as selective crystallization and chromatographic techniques, e.g., counter current distribution, and enantiomers may be separated from

each other by the selective crystallization of their diastereomeric salts with optically active acids.

Pure stereochemically isomeric forms may also be derived from the corresponding pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the appropriate starting materials, provided that the reaction occurs stereospecifically.

It is evident that the cis and trans diastereomeric racemates may be further resolved into their optical isomers, cis(+), cis(-), trans(+) and trans(-) by the application of methodologies known to those skilled in the art.

Stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) are naturally intended to be embraced within the scope of the invention.

The following examples are intented to illustrate and not to limit the scope of the present invention. Unless otherwise stated 15 all parts therein are by weight.

#### EXPERIMENTAL PART

# A. Preparation of Intermediates

### Example 1

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

- a) A mixture of 302 parts of ethyl 2-[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinylidenelacetate hydrochloride and 200 parts of glacial acetic acid was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at a temperature between 24-36°C, in the presence of 4 parts of platinum oxide. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was washed with 1,1'-oxybisethane, alkalized with sodium hydroxide and extracted with 1,1'-oxybisethane. The extract was dried over potassium carbonate and evaported. The oily residue was distilled in vacuo, yielding 205 parts of the crude oily free base. From this oil l part was taken to prepare the hydrochloride salt. It was dissolved in 1,1'-oxybisethane and gaseous hydrogen chloride was introduced into the solution: a semi-solid salt was precipitated. The solvent was decanted and the residue was dissolved again in a mixture of 6 parts of ethanol and 4 parts of 1,1'-oxybisethane. This solution was concentrated to 5 parts. To the residue were added 12 parts of 1,1'-oxybisethane, whereupon a solid was precipitated. It was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.2 parts of ethyl 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineacetate hydrochloride; mp. 122.5 - 137°C (intermediate 1)
- b) A mixture of 8 parts of ethyl 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineacetate hydrochloride and 80 parts of a dilute hydrochloric acid
  solution was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, the
  reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was washed with
  2-propanone and the solvent was evaporated again. The solid residue
  was washed with 2-propanone, filtered off and dried, yielding 6
  parts of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineacetic acid hydrochloride;
  mp. 137-145°C (2).

### Example 2

To a suspension of 68.5 parts of ethyl 4-oxo-l-piperidine-carboxylate in 240 parts of methanol were added portionwise 3.8 parts of sodium borohydride at a temperature between 20-30°C (the reaction mixture was cooled if necessary in a water-bath). After the addition was complete, the whole was stirred for 30 minutes. The

reaction mixture was then poured into a mixture of 53.5 parts of ammonium chloride and 400 parts of water. The methanol was evaporated. The product was extracted with trichloromethane. The extract was dried and evaporated. The oily residue was distilled in vacuo, yielding 60 parts of oily ethyl 4-hydroxy-1-piperidine-carboxylate; bp. 140°C at 1.4 mm. pressure;  $n_{\rm D}^{20}$ : 1.4796;  $d_{20}^{20}$ : 1.1166 (3).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:
methyl (cis+trans)-4-hydroxy-3-methyl-1-piperidinecarboxylate (4).
Example 3

To a stirred solution of 90 parts of 1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-4-piperidinol, 37.5 parts of N,N-diethylethanamine and 1300 parts of dichloromethane was added dropwise a solution of 42.3 parts of methanesulfonyl chloride in 130 parts of dichloromethane (exothermic reaction: temperature rose to 35°C). Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours at room temperature. Water was added and the layers were separated. The organic phase was washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was suspended in 2,2'-oxybispropane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 116 parts (100%) of 1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-4-piperidinol methanesulfonate (ester); mp. 168.5 - 175.3°C (5). Example 4

2350 Parts of hydrogen chloride were bubbled through 5600 parts of cooled ethanol (ice bath) at 10°C. Then there were added dropwise, during a 45 minutes period, 1500 parts of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineacetonitrile. Upon completion, the whole was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was stirred in 2400 parts of acetonitrile. The product was filtered off, washed with 560 parts of acetonitrile and dried, yielding 2000 parts (85.7%) of O-ethyl 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineethanimidate hydrochloride (6)

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

O-methyl 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineethanimidate dihydrochloride (7).

Example 5

A mixture of 180.0 parts of 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine, 122.0 parts of 2-thiophenemethanamine, 191.0 parts of sodium carbonate, 1 part of potassium iodide and 810 parts of N.N-dimethylacetamide was

5

10

15

20

25

```
stirred for 1.50 hous at 100°C. The reaction mixture was poured into about 4000 parts of water. The whole was stirred overnight at room temperature. The precipitated product was filtered off and dried in vacuo at 40°C, yielding 251.5 parts of 3-nitro-N-(2-thienylmethyl)-2-pyridinamine; mp. 100°C (8).
```

```
2-pyridinamine; mp. 100°C (8).
5
          Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the
       appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:
       N-(2-nitrophenyl)-3-pyridinemethanamine (9);
       N-(4-fluorophenylmethyl)-3-nitro-2-pyridinamine; mp. 76°C (10)
       N-(3-nitro-2-pyridinyl)-2-pyridinemethanamine; mp. 113.6°C (11)
10
       2-nitro-N-(2-thienylmethyl)benzenamine (12)
       4-methyl-N-(2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine; mp. 65°C (13)
       N-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-3-nitro-2-pyridinamine; mp. 80.0-87.3°C
       N<sup>3</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (15);
15
       N-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3-nitro-4-pyridinamine;mp. 136.8°C (16);
       N-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-nitro-3-pyridinamine, 1-oxide (17);
        4-fluoro-N-(4-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine (18);
        4-fluoro-N-(5-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine (19);
        4-fluoro-N-(4-methyl-2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine; mp. 99.9°C (20);
 20
        4-fluoro-N-(3-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine; (21);
        4-fluoro-N-(2-methoxy-6-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine; (22);
        4-fluoro-N-(4,5-dimethoxy-2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine; (23);
        4-fluoro-N-(4-chloro-5-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine; (24);
        4-fluoro-N-(5-chloro-4-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)benzenemethanamine; (25);
 25
        N-(4-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)-2-furanmethanamine; (26);
        N-(5-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)-2-furanmethanamine; (27);
        N-(4-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)-2-pyridinemethanamine; (28);
        N-(5-methoxy-2-nitrophenyl)-2-pyridinemethanamine; (29);
        N-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-6-methoxy-3-nitro-2-pyridinamine; (30);
 30
        N-[(2-furanyl)methyl]-6-methoxy-3-nitro-2-pyridinamine; (31); and
        \underline{N}-(3-nitro-6-methoxy-2-pyridinyl)-2-pyridinemethanamine; (32).
```

#### Example 6

To a stirred and cooled mixture of 40 parts of N-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-4-nitro-3-pyridinamine, 1-oxide and 1050 parts of trichloromethane were added dropwise 47 parts of phosphor penta-chloride at a

temperature between 0 and -10°C. Upon completion, the whole was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour. While stirring, the reaction mixture was cooled. The precipitated product was filtered off, stirred in water and alkalized with ammonium hydroxide. The product was extracted with trichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was stirred in 2,2'-oxybispropane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 22.2 parts of N-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-nitro-3-pyridinamine; mp. 91.9°C (33).

### Example 7

A mixture of 100 parts of N-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-3-nitro2-pyridinamine, 3 parts of a solution of thiophene in methanol 4% and
480 parts of methanol saturated with ammonia was hydrogenated at normal
pressure and at 50°C with 5 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%.

After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was
filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 88.4 parts of
N-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]- 2,3-pyridinediamine; mp. 118.1°C (34).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:
N-(3-pyridinylmethyl)-1,2-benzenediamine (35);
N-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (36);
N-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-2,3-pyridinediamine; mp. 134.8 (37).

```
N-(3-pyridinylmethyl)-1,2-benzenediamine (35);
N<sup>2</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (36);
N<sup>2</sup>-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-2,3-pyridinediamine; mp. 134.9 (37);
N<sup>2</sup>-(2-furanylmethyl)-2,3-pyridinediamine (38);
N<sup>1</sup>-(2-thienylmethyl)-1,2-benzenediamine (39);
N<sup>2</sup>-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-pyridinediamine; mp. 92.1°C (40);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-1,2-benzenediamine (41);
N<sup>2</sup>-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine; mp. 125.1°C (42);
N<sup>4</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3,4-pyridinediamine; mp. 163.7°C (43);
N<sup>3</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3,4-pyridinediamine; mp. 159.6°C (44);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (45);
N<sup>2</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (46);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-methyl-1,2-benzenediamine (47);
N-[(5-methyl-2-furanyl)methyl]-1,2-benzenediamine (48);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (49);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-6-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (50);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4,5-dimethoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (51);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-5-chloro-4-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (52);
N<sup>1</sup>-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-4-chloro-5-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (53);
N<sup>1</sup>-(2-furanylmethyl)-4-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (54);
```

 $\frac{N^1}{N^1}$ -(2-furanylmethyl)-5-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (55);  $\frac{N^1}{N^1}$ -(2-pyridinylmethyl)-4-methoxy-1,2-benzenediamine (56);  $\frac{N^1}{N^2}$ -[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-6-methoxy-2,3-pyridinediamine (58);  $\frac{N^2}{N^2}$ -(2-furanylmethyl)-6-methoxy-2,3-pyridinediamine (59); and  $\frac{N^2}{N^2}$ -(2-pyridinylmethyl)-6-methoxy-2,3-pyridinediamine (60); Example 8

A mixture of 60 parts of 2-chloro-lH-benzimidazole, 58 parts of 1-(chloromethyl)-4-fluorobenzene, 42.5 parts of sodium carbonate, 0.1 parts of potassium iodide and 135 parts of N,N-dimethyl- formamide was stirred and heated overnight at 70°C. The reaction mixture was poured into water. The precipitated product was filtered off and dissolved in trichloromethane. The solution was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2,2'-oxybispropane, yielding 62.5 parts of 2-chloro-l-(4-fluorophenylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole (61).

### Example 9

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

A mixture of 8.35 parts of thiourea, 26 parts of 2-chloro-l[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazole and 400 parts of ethanol was
stirred and refluxed for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated.
The residue was suspended in 2,2'-oxybispropane. The precipitated
product was filtered off and crystallized from ethanol, yielding 6.1
parts of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazole-2-thiol; mp.
194.7°C (62).

### Example 10

To a stirred solution of 6 parts of 1,2-dimethyl-lH-benzimidazole in 50 parts of dry pyridine were added dropwise 6.2 parts of benzoyl chloride at room temperature. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours at room temperature. The whole was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in 260 parts of dichloromethane. Water was added and the solution was treated with concentrate ammonium hydroxide. The dichloromethane layer was decanted, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was taken up twice in 45 parts of methylbenzene and the latter was evaporated each time, yielding 1-benzoyl-1,4-dihydro-4-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]pyridine as an oily residue (63).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

ethyl 4-[(l-methyl-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-l(4H)-pyridinecarboxylate as an oily residue (64).

## Example 11

A mixture of 9.7 parts of 4-fluoro-8-(4-fluorophenyl)benzene-butanoyl chloride, 4.1 parts of 2,6-dimethylpyridine and 68 parts of tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at room temperature with 2 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 8.5 parts of 4-fluoro-8-(4-fluorophenyl)benzenebutanal (65).

### Example 12

0

5

0

:5

50

35

To a stirred mixture of 26 parts of 1-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-5H-tetrazole-5-thione, 13.8 parts of potassium carbonate and 240 parts of 2-propanone were added dropwise 376 parts of 1,2-dibromoethane. Upon completion, stirring was continued overnight. The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 45 parts (95%) of 5-[(2-bromoethyl)thio]-1-ethyl-1H-tetrazole as a residue (66).

### Example 13

To a stirred and cooled (0-10°C) mixture of 59 parts of 2-propanamine and 650 parts of dichloromethane were added dropwise 94.2 parts of 3-bromopropanoyl chloride. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 5 minutes. The whole was washed with water. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of 2,2'-oxybispropane and hexane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 70 parts (73%) of 3-bromo-N-(1-methylethyl)propanamide; mp. 60°C (67).

### Example 14

A mixture of 4.76 parts of 6-chloro-N<sup>4</sup>-methyl-4,5-pyridinediamine, 26.6 parts of 1,1,1-triethoxyethane and 30 parts of acetic acid anhydride was stirred and refluxed for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of hexane and methylbenzene. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 5.3 parts (96.3%) of 6-chloro-8,9-dimethyl-9H-purine (68).

### Example 15

A mixture of 4.76 parts of 6-chloro-N methyl-4,5-pyrimidinediamine and 7.2 parts of urea was stirred and heated for 1 hour at 180°C. After cooling, the residue was suspended in water. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 3.3 parts (60%) of 6-chloro-9-methyl-9H-purin-8-ol (69).

# B. Treparation of Final Compounds

### Example 16

To 73 parts of hot (70°C) polyphosphoric acid were added 27 parts of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineacetic acid hydrochloride: tem
5 perature rose to 100°C. When the addition was complete, there were added portionwise 14 parts of 1,2-benzenediamine and stirring and heating was continued for 50 minutes at 170°C. The hot reaction mixture was poured into 300 parts of warm water. The acid solution was alkalized with a potassium hydroxide solution. The precipitated free base was filtered off, washed with water and extracted with trichloromethane. The extract was dried and evaporated. The solid residue was recrystallized from a mixture of 2-propanone and methanol, yielding 17 parts of 2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-methyl]-1H-benzimidazole; mp. 221.5-222°C (compound 1).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:
2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine;
mp. 172.9°C (2).

### Example 17

15

A mixture of 27.3 parts of O-methyl 1-(phenylmethyl)-4
20 piperidineethanimidate dihydrochloride, 14 parts of N-(2-furanylmethyl)-1,2-benzenediamine and 250 parts of acetic acid was stirred
overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated
and water was added to the residue. The whole was alkalized with
sodium carbonate and extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The

25 extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was
crystallized from 1,1'-oxybisethane. The product was filtered off
and dried, yielding 15.5 parts (57%) of 1-(2-furanylmethyl)-2[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazole; mp.
124.8°C (3).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

1-phenyl-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole;

mp. 141.6°C (4); and

2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(3-pyridinylmethyl)-lH
benzimidazole; mp. 125.4°C (5).

### Example 18

```
A mixture of 116.5 parts of O-ethyl 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-
   piperidineethanimidate hydrochloride, 61.5 parts of N1-[(4-methyl-
   phenyl)methyl]-1,2-benzenediamine and 400 parts of methanol was
   stirred and refluxed overnight. Another portion of 40 parts of
   O-ethyl 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineethanimidate hydrochloride was
   added and stirring was continued for 4 hours at reflux. The reaction
   mixture was evaporated. Water was added to the residue. The solution
   was treated with ammonium hydroxide. The product was extracted with
.0 trichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated.
   The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The product was
   filtered off and dried, yielding 74.5 parts (63%) of 1-[(4-methyl-
   phenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1H-benz-
   imidazole; mp. 124.2°C (6).
.5
      Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the
   appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:
   2-[[l-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-l-(2-thienylmethyl)-
   lH-benzimidazole; mp. 156.3°C (7);
   3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-
20 methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; mp. 103.2-105.8°C (8);
   2-[[1-(phenylmethy1)-4-piperidiny1]methy1]-3-(2-pyridinylmethy1)-3H-
   imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; mp. 118.5-120.9°C (9);
   3-(2-furanylmethyl)-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-methyl]-3H-
   imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; mp. 118.5-119.8°C (10);
25 l-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-
   methyl]-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 95.2°C (11);
   2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3-(2-thienylmethyl)-3H-
   imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; mp. 115.2°C (12);
   3-(phenylmethyl)-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-
30 imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (13);
   1-(phenylmethyl)-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1H-
   benzimidazole; mp. 130°C (14);
   3-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-
   methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (15);
```

35 3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-

```
methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; mp. 83.4°C (16);
   1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-
   piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 112.6°C (17);
   1-(3-furanylmethy1)-2-[[1-(phenylmethy1)-4-piperidiny1]methy1]-1H-
   benzimidazole; mp. 102.0°C (18);
   1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-5-methyl-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperi-
   dinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole (19);
   1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-6-methoxy-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperi-
   dinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 110°C (20);
10 5-fluoro-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole;
   mp. 206.2°C (21); and
   1-[(5-methy1-2-furany1)methy1]-2-[[1-(phenylmethy1)-4-piperidiny1]-
   methyl]-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 96°C (22).
   Example 19
15 A mixture of 43 parts of 1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidineacetic acid
   hydrochloride, 31.5 parts of N3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2,3-
   pyridinediamine, 850 parts of phosphoryl chloride and 20 parts of
   N,N-diethylbenzenamine was stirred for 6 hours at reflux
   temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated. Methylbenzene was
20 added twice to the residue and the whole was each time evaporated. **
   The final residue was poured into ice water and the whole was made
   alkaline with a dilute sodium hydroxide solution. The product was w
    extracted twice with dichloromethane. The combined extracts were
   washed twice with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue
25 was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a
    mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia,
    (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and
    the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from
    acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 30
30 parts (50.2%) of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-
    4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine; mp. 140.7°C (23).
       In a similar manner there were also prepared:
    1-{(4-fluoropheny1)methy1]-2-[[1-(phenylmethy1)-4-piperidiny1]-
    methyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine; mp. 139.1°C (24); and
```

35 3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-

methyl]-3H-imidazo(4,5-c)pyridine; mp. 116.9°C (25). Example 20

To a stirred mixture of 3.5 parts of ethyl 4-hydroxy-lpiperidinecarboxylate and 135 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was

added 1 part of a sodium hydride dispersion 50% and stirring was
continued for 2 hours at room temperature. After the addition of 5.2
parts of 2-chloro-l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazole, the
whole was further stirred overnight at room temperature. The
reaction mixture was poured into ice water and the product was

attracted with trichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered
and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2,2'-oxybispropane, yielding 2.5 parts (31.5%) of ethyl 4-[[l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-l-piperidinecarboxylate;
mp. 94.0°C (26).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

methyl (<u>cis+trans</u>)-4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol2-yl]oxy]-3-methyl-l-piperidinecarboxylate (27).

Example 21

To a stirred mixture of 1.5 parts of 1H-benzimidazole-2-thiol and 90 parts of N.N-dimethylformamide were added 0.8 parts of a sodium hydride dispersion 50%. Stirring was continued for 1 hour. Then there were added 3.3 parts of 1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-4-piperidinol methanesulfonate(ester) and the whole was stirred overnight at room temperature. Stirring was continued overnight at 80°C. The reaction mixture was poured into water. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile, yielding 0.7 parts (18%) of 4-[(1H-benzimidazol-2-yl)thio]-1-[(4-methyl-phenyl)sulfonyl]piperidine; mp. 194.8°C (28).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-l[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]piperidine; mp. 167.2°C (29).

Example 22

To a stirred and cooled (0°C) mixture of 7.2 parts of 35 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-l-[(4-

methylphenyl)sulfonyl]piperidine and 95 parts of dichloromethane was added dropwise a solution of 2.6 parts of 3-chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic acid in dichloromethane. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with a sodium carbonate solution and with water. The organic layer was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (96:4 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.7 parts (9%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]]H-benzimidazol-2-yl]sulfinyl]-1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]piperidine; mp. 166.2°C (30).

### Example 23

To a stirred solution of 7.2 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-l-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-piperidine in 195 parts of dichloromethane was added dropwise a solution of 7 parts of 3-chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic acid in 65 parts of dichloromethane. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours at room temperature. The whole was washed with a sodium carbonate solution and twice with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 3 parts (40%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]sulfonyl]-l-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]piperidine; mp. 214.7°C (31). Example 24

A mixture of 16 parts of 1-benzoyl-1,4-dihydro-4-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]pyridine and 160 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at 50°C with 5 parts of

30 palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (97.5:2.5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were

35 collected and the eluent was evaporated. The oily residue was

crystallized from 14 parts of 1,1'-oxybisethane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 7.8 parts (58.5%) of 1-benzoyl-4-[(1-methyl-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]pyridine; mp. 159.3°C (32). In a similar manner there was also prepared:

ethyl 4-[(l-methyl-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-l-piperidinecarboxylate; mp. 98.2°C (33).

### Example 25

To a stirred mixture of 55 parts of 2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole and 450 parts of 10  $\underline{N}, \underline{N}$ -dimethylformamide were added 10.6 parts of a sodium hydride dispersion 50% and stirring was continued for 1 hour. Then there were added dropwise 26 parts of 1-(chloromethyl)-4-fluorobenzene (slightly exothermic reaction). Upon completion, stirring was continued overnight at room temperature. Water was added and the 15 product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The solid residue was stirred in 1,1'-oxybisethane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 67.6 parts (90%) of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 127.5°C (34).

20 Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared: 2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)lH-benzimidazole; mp. 98.7-105.8°C (35); and 5(or 6)-fluoro-1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-25 piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole (36)

# Example 26

A mixture of 41 parts of 3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine and 480 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal 30 pressure and at 50°C with 5 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 30. parts (89%) of 3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (37).

35 In a similar manner there were also prepared:

```
2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 195-196.5°C (38)
   3-{(4-methylphenyl)methyl}-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo-
   [4,5-b]pyridine (39);
   1-(phenylmethyl)-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole.
   monohydrate; mp. 72.5°C (40);
   3-(phenylmethyl)-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine
   (41);
   1-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole
   ethanedioate (1:2). monohydrate; mp. 195.1°C (42);
10 1-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole
   ethanedioate (1:2). monohydrate; mp. 172.1°C (43);
   2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-
   pyridine (E)-2-butenedioate (2:3); mp. 191.1-194.0°C (44);
   3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-
15 pyridine (E)-2-butenedioate (1:2); mp. 200.0-201.2°C (45);
   l-phenyl-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 142.6°C (46);
    l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole
    (E)-2-butenedioate (2:3); mp. 204.7°C (47);
    1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-imidazo[4,5-b]-
20 pyridine (E)-2-butenedioate(2:5); mp. 214.4°C (48);
    1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]-
    pyridineethanedioate(2:3).monohydrate; mp. 173.5°C (49);
    3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-c]-
    pyridine (E)-2-butenedicate(2:5); mp. 168.8°C (50);
25 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benz-
    imidazole dihydrochloride.monohydrate; mp. 214.1°C (51);
    1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-5-methyl-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-benz-
    imidazole (52); and
    1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-6-methoxy-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzim-
30 idazole (53).
    5(or 6)-fluoro-1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-
    benzimidazole (54).
    Example 27
```

A mixture of 4.95 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-35 lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-l-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]piperidine, 225 parts of a hydrobromic acid solution 48% in water and 5 parts of phenol was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue as taken up in water and treated with a sodium hydroxide solution. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by filtration over silica gel using a mixture of trichoromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated, yielding 3.4 parts (99%) of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)
10 methyl]-2-[(4-piperidinyl)thio]-1H-benzimidazole (55).

### Example 28

A mixture of 3.3 parts of 1-benzoyl-4-[(1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]piperidine, 1.7 parts of water and 40 parts of 2-propanol was stirred and refluxed for 30 hours. The reaction

15 mixture was concentrated and the residue was shaken with 260 parts of dichloromethane. The formed precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was washed thoroughly with 20 parts of water. The organic phase was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 3.4 parts (83%) of 1-methyl-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole ethanedioate (1:2); mp. 219.7°C (56).

### Example 29

To a stirred mixture of 76 parts of 2-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(3-pyridinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole and 360

25 parts of methylbenzene were added dropwise 41 parts of ethyl carbonochloridate. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours at reflux. Another portion of 5 parts of ethyl carbonochloridate was added dropwise. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours at reflux. After cooling, the organic layer was washed with a sodium carbonate solution, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by filtration over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (90:10 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated, yielding 35.6 parts (50%) of ethyl 4-[[1-(3-pyridinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (57).

Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:

methyl 4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinecarboxylate (58);

- 5 ethyl 4-[[1-(2-thienylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinecarboxylate monohydrochloride; mp. 178.7°C (59);
  ethyl 4-[[1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinecarboxylate monohydrochloride; mp. 197.4-199.2°C (60);
  ethyl 4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-
- piperidinecarboxylate as a residue (61);
  ethyl 4-[[3-(2-thienylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinecarboxylate as a residue (62); and
  ethyl 4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinecarboxylate (63).

# 15 Example 30

A mixture of 68 parts of ethyl 4-[[1-(2-thienylmethyl)
1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinecarboxylate monohydrochloride, 95 parts of potassium hydroxide, 800 parts of 2-propanol
and 10 parts of water was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. The

reaction mixture was evaporated and water was added to the residue.
The product was extracted with methylbenzene. The extract was dried,
filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 1,1'-oxybisethane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 27 parts

(49%) of 2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-1H-benz-

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

1-(2-furanylmethyl)-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole

(E)-2-butenedioate (2:3); mp. 219.6°C (65);

1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinyloxy)-1H-benzimidazole

30 dihydrochloride; mp. 145.2°C (66)

2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1-(3-pyridinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole as a residue (67);

3-(2-furanylmethyl)-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine ethanedioate (2:3). monohydrate; mp. 136.7°C (68);

35 2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3-(2-thienylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-

pyridine (E)-2-butenedioate (2:3); mp. 209.6°C (69);

cis-l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[(3-methyl-4-piperidinyl)oxy]-lH-benzimidazole monohydrochloride.monohydrate mp. 143.7°C (70); and

trans-l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[(3-methyl-4-piperidinyl)oxy]-lHbenzimidazole dihydrochloride; mp. 111.6°C (71).

Example 31

A mixture of 2 parts of ethyl 4-[[1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinecarboxylate and 30 parts of a hydrobromic acid solution 48% was stirred and refluxed for 15

10 minutes. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The oily residue was crystallized from a mixture of ethanol and 2-propanone, yielding 2 parts of 2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-l-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole trihydrobromide; mp. 208.3-226.3°C (72).

Example 32

15 To a stirred mixture of 72 parts of 1-(3-furanylmethyl)-2-[[l-(phenylmethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole and 324 parts of methylbenzene were added dropwise 25.5 parts of ethyl carbonochloridate at reflux. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours at reflux temperature. After cooling, the mixture was 20 washed twice with a sodium hydroxide solution 5%, once with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. This residue, together with 560 parts of 2-propanol, 69.9 parts of potassium hydroxide and 6 parts of water, was stirred and refluxed for 22 hours. The whole was cooled and evaporated. The residue was taken up in water. The 25 product was extracted three times with dichloromethane. The combined extracts were washed twice with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane, methanol and ammonium hydroxide (90:10:1 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions 30 were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was stirred in 2-propanone. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 28.0 parts (49.8%) of 1-(3-furanylmethyl)-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 180°C (73).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

1-'(5-methy1-2-furany1)methy1)-2-(4-piperidinylmethy1)-1H-benz-imidazole; mp. 90°C (74).

## Example 33

To a stirred mixture of 10.2 parts of l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]2-[(4-piperidinyl)thio]-lH-benzimidazole, 3.1 parts of N,N-diethylethanamine and 130 parts of dichloromethane was added dropwise a
solution of 5.12 parts of (phenylmethyl) carbonochloridate in 65
parts of dichloromethane. Upon completion, stirring was continued
for 1 hour at room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed with
water. The organic layer was dried, filtered and evaporated,
yielding 14.3 parts of (phenylmethyl) 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-l-piperidinecarboxylate as a
residue (75).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

15 (phenylmethyl) 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]sulfonyl]-l-piperidinecarboxylate.; mp. 147.3°C (76); and l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylsulfonyl)-lH-benz-imidazole.; mp. 133.5°C (77).

### Example 34

- A solution of 22.3 parts of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-5-methoxy2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole dihydrochloride.monohydrate
  in 75 parts of a hydrobromic acid solution 48% in water was stirred
  and refluxed for 18 hours. The whole was slightly cooled and
  evaporated. The residue was dissolved in water. The solution was

  25 treated with an ammonium hydroxide solution. The product was
  extracted three times with trichloromethane. The combined organic
  layers were washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated,
  yielding 15.7 parts (92%) of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-5-ol; mp. 210°C (78).
- In a similar manner there was also prepared:

  1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol6-ol (79).

# Example 35

To a stirred mixture of 19.9 parts of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-35 methyl]-2-(4-piperidinyloxy)-lH-benzimidazole dihydrochloride, 12.2 parts of N,N-diethylethanamine and 65 parts of dichloromethane was added a solution of 6.5 parts of 2-furanacetic acid and 20.6 parts of N,N-methanetetraylbis[cyclohexanamine] in 130 parts of dichloromethane. The whole was stirred over weekend at room temperature. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was poured into water. The organic phase was separated, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 1,1'-oxybisethane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 5.3 parts (25%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-1-[2-(2-fuanyl)acetyl]piperidine; mp. 128.7°C (80). Example 36

A mixture of 2 parts of poly(exymethylene), 3.5 parts of l-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole, l part of a solution of thiophene in ethanol 4% and 120 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at 50°C with 2 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated 20 amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in water. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and 25 dried, yielding 3 parts (536%) of l-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-2-[(1-methyl-4-piperidinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazole (E)-2-butenedioate (2:3); mp. 188.9°C (81).

30

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

5

	No.	L	R <sup>1</sup>	Al	В	salt/	mp.
						base	°C
	<u> </u>						·
10	82	CH3	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	CH .	CH <sub>2</sub>	*	193.1
	83	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	4-F-C6H4CH2	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	*	165.7
	84	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	4-F-C6H4CH2	CH ·	0	*	210.5
	85	CH <sub>3</sub>	4-F-C6H4CH2	CH	0	*	161.0
	86	CH <sub>3</sub>	2-furanylmethyl	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	*	178.4
15	87	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	2-furanylmethyl	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>		206.0
	88	CH <sub>3</sub>	4-thiazolylmethyl	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>		146.9
	89	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	4-F-C6H4CH2	N	CH <sub>2</sub>		163.0
	90	CH <sub>3</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	N	CH <sub>2</sub>		158.2
	91	CE 3	H	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	base	oil
20	92	(4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	H	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>		212.5
	93	CE3	C6H5CH2	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	base	96.1
	94	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	C6H5CH2	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	***	194.2
	95	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	CH3	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	***	116.3
	96	CH <sub>3</sub>	4-F-C6H4CH2	CH	S	***	139.0
25	97	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -N	4-F-C6H4CH2	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	2HC1	>300
	l			•	H <sub>2</sub> O		(dec.
	98	cyclohexyl	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	N	CH <sub>2</sub>	***	163.9
	99	cyclohexyl	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	CH	CH <sub>2</sub>	***	172.1
	1	·					

\*: (E)-2-butenedioate salt (2:3)

\*\* : ethanedioate (1:2) salt.monohydrate

\*\*\*: ethanedioate (1:2)

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(1-methylethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-

35 methyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine; mp. 115.9°C (100).

### Example 37

A mixture of 7.9 parts of 3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride, 5.3 parts of sodium carbonate and 120 parts of 4-methyl-2-pentanone was stirred and refluxed for 15 minutes using a water separator. 3.2 Parts of 2-ethenylpyridine were added at reflux temperature and stirring was continued for 3 hours at reflux using a water separator. Then there were added 3.2 parts of 2-ethenylpyridine and the whole was stirred and refluxed for 19.50 hours using a water separator. After cooling, the salts were filtered off and the filtrate was washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in 2-propanone. The salt was filtered off and crystallized from a mixture of ethanol and 2-propanone, yielding 2.5 parts (17%) of 3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-15 2-[[1-[2-(2-pyridinyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridine ethanedicate (1:3); mp. 143.1°C (101).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

4-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]-2-butanone ethanedioate(2:5).; mp. 163.4°C (102); and

1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(2-pyridinyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]-methyl]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(1:3).monohydrate;
mp. 138.3°C (103).

### Example 38

1.8 Parts of gaseous oxirane were bubbled through a stirred

25 mixture of 8.5 parts of l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[(4piperidinyl)thio]-lH-benzimidazole and 120 parts of methanol.

Stirring was continued overnight at room temperature. The reaction
mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by column
chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane

30 and methanol (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were
collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted
into the ethanedioate salt in 2-propanone. The salt was filtered off
and dried, yielding 5.5 parts (48%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-l-piperidineethanol ethanedioate

35 (1:1); mp. 165.2°C (104).

```
In a similar manner there were also prepared:
   4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-l-piperidine-
   ethanol (E)-2-butenedicate (2:3); mp. 156.1°C (105);
   4-[(1-phenyl-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperidineethanol;
5 mp. 112.2°C (106);
   4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
   dineethanol; mp. 135.6°C (107);
   4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
   dineethanol (108);
10 4-[[1-(4-thiazolylmethyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
   dineethanol ethanedioate (2:5); mp. 123.5-137.8°C (109);
   4-[[1-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
    dineethanol ethanedioate (1:2); mp. 148.5°C (110);
    4-[[3-(2-pyridinylmethyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-
15 piperidineethanol (E)-2-butenedioate (2:3); mp. 151.0°C (111);
    4-[[l-(phenylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidine-
    ethanol; mp. 136.9°C (112);
    4-[[1-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
    dineethanol ethanedioate (1:2); mp. 167.7°C (113);
20 4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-
    4-[(1-naphthalenyloxy)methyl]-1-piperidineethanol (E)-2-butenedioate
    (2:3); mp. 144.7°C (114);
    4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-
    1-piperidineethanol; mp. 116.8°C (115); and
 25 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-~-[(2-
    naphthalenyloxy)methyl]-1-piperidineethanol ethanedioate(1:2);
    mp. 152.9°C (116).
    Example 39
       A mixture of 7.9 parts of 3-[(4-fluorophenylmethyl]-2-(4-
 30 piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride, 8.5
    parts of sodium carbonate and 120 parts of 4-methy1-2-pentanone was
     stirred and refluxed for 30 minutes using a water separator. 7.8
     Parts of 2-thiopheneethanol methanesulfonate (ester) were added and
     the whole was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours using a water
```

35 separator. After cooling, the salts were filtered off, washed with

0151826

4-methyl-2-pentanone and the filtrate was washed with water. The organic layer was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloride salt in 2-propanol and 2-propanone. The salt was filtered off and dried in vacuo at 60°C, yielding 8.0 parts (76%) of 3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl)-2-[[1-[2-(2-thienyl)-ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride. monohydrate; mp. 210.8°C (117).

Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the appropriate starting materials, there was also prepared:

10 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(2-thienyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]-methyl]- 1H-benzimidazole ethanedioate(1:2).hemihydrate; mp. 142.0°C. (118).

### Example 40

A mixture of 6.5 parts of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4
piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole, 4.2 parts of sodium carbonate
and 120 parts of 4-methyl-2-pentanone was stirred and refluxed for
30 minutes using a water separator. 5.2 Parts of 1-(3-chloropropoxy)-4-fluorobenzene were added at reflux temperature and
stirring was continued for 3 hours at this temperature using a water

separator. After cooling to room temperature, the salts were
filtered off and the filtrate was washed twice with water, dried,
filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the
ethanedicate salt in 2-propanone. The salt was filtered off, washed
with 2-propanone and crystallized from methanol. The product was

filtered off and dried in vacuo at 80°C, yielding 7 parts (53%) of
2-[[1-[3-(4-fluorophenoxy)propyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-[(4fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedicate (1:2); mp.
186.7°C (119).

30

Pollowing the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:

			•	s	R <sup>1</sup>	Al	salt/	mp.(°C)
A 1		•	1				base	
.0 L	120	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> O-		2 F		СН	base	143-144.
		4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	-	3 I	1	CH	base	140-144
i	122	C6H5-	•	2 1	Ħ	CH	base	183-187
L5	123	N-N-C <sub>2</sub> H		2 .	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	127.6
:	124	4-morpho:	linyl	2	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	N	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	205.2
i	125	N N C <sub>2</sub> H	E	2	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	N	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	182.2
1		C2H2O-	5	2	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	N	2HC1	180.0
20		2 5			0 4 2		н <sub>2</sub> 0	
	127	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	c(o)-	3	4-F-C6H4CH2	Ŋ	2HCl H <sub>2</sub> O	167.1
	128	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	NHC(O)-	1	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	ห	(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	227.5
_	1	C6H5S-			4-F-C6H4CH2	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	173.5
25	1	C6H5SO2		2	4-F-C6H4CH2	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	193.0
	1	4-morpho	linyl	2	4-F-C6H4CH2	CH	*	207.7
	t			yl 1	4-F-C6H4CH2	N	3(COOH)2	165.5
	4	С <sub>2</sub> н <sub>5</sub> 0-			4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub>	CE	***	113.0
20	1	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH	NHC(0)-	1	4-F-C6H4CH2	CE	I ***	151.0
30	1	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H		3	4-F-C6H4CH2		2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	157.1
	1	•	•	yl l	4-F-C6H4CH2	CI	i **	205.1
	137	2,3-dih	dro-1,4-	1	4-F-C6H4CH2	N	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	176.8
			oxin-2-yl					

```
: (E)-2-butenedicate salt (1:2)
            : (E)-2-butenedicate salt (2:3)
         ***: ethanedioate salt (2:5)
                 In a similar manner there was also prepared:
        2-[[1-[[1-(1-curlenger)]-1-curlenger]]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-curlenger]-1-c
         4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-
        pyridine; mp. 247.7°C (138).
                Example 41
               A mixture of 3.16 parts of 1-(3-chloropropy1)-1,3-dihydro-2H-
10 benzimidazol-2-one, 4.4 parts of l-(2-furanylmethyl)-2-(4-
        piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole, 2 parts of sodium hydrogen
        carbonate and 80 parts of ethanol was stirred and refluxed for
        32 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled and filtered over Hyflo. The
        filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column
15 chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and
       methanol (90:10 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected
        and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the
        ethanedicate salt in methanol. The salt was filtered off and dried,
       yielding 4.2 parts (43%) of 1-[3-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-1H-benz-
20 imidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]propyl]-1,3-dihydro-2H-benz-
       imidazol-2-one ethanedioate (1:2); mp. 214.7-218.4°C (139).
                In a similar manner there were also prepared:
       1-[3-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-l-
       piperidinyl]propyl]-1,3-dihydro-2H-benzimidazol-2-one; mp. 186.7°C
25 (140);
       3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-l-
       piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,4(lH,3H)quinazolinedione; mp. 190.4°C (141).
       3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(2-propenyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-
       3H-imidazo-[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride.monohydrate; mp. 166.9°C
30 (142);
       4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-
       methyl]-N-(1-methylethyl)-1-piperidinepropanamide; mp. 134.0°C (143);
       l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(2-propenyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-
       lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 119.0°C (144);
35 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(1-methylet-
```

hyl)-1-piperidinepropanamide (E)-2-butenedioate(2:3); mp. 138.3°C (145); 3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(phenylsulfonyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl)-methyl]-3H-imidazo-[4,5-b]pyridine ethanedioate(2:3); mp. 159.0°C (146); and

3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(phenylthio)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 190.0°C (147).

Example 42

A mixture of 9.3 parts of 2-iodoacetamide, 20.0 parts of 3-[(4-fluorophenylmethyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]10 pyridine dihydrochloride, 17.0 parts of sodium hydrogen carbonate and 200 parts of ethanol was stirred for 3 hours at at reflux temperature. The salts were filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane, methanol and ammonium hydroxide (90:9:1 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of 2,2'-oxybis-propane and 2-propanone. The product was filtered off and dried in vacuo at 60°C, yielding 8.5 parts (44.5%) of 4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineacetamide;
20 mp. 153.4°C (148).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidineacetamide; mp. 187.5°C (149).

Example 43

A mixture of 5.55 parts of N-(dihydro-3,3-diphenyl-2(3H)-furanyl-idene)-N-methylmethanaminium bromide, 4.85 parts of l-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole, 2 parts of sodium carbonate and 90 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred overnight at 70°C. The reaction mixture was poured into water. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized

from acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 1.8 parts (20%) of  $4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N,N-dimethyl-<math>\checkmark$ ,  $\checkmark$  -diphenyl-l-piperidinebutanamide; mp. 151.4°C (150).

### Example 44

A mixture of 6.62 parts of 6-(2-bromoethyl)-3,7-dimethyl-5Hthiazolo[3,2-a]pyrimidin-5-one monohydrobromide, 4.45 parts of
3-(2-furanylmethyl)-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridine,
4.8 parts of sodium carbonate and 90 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was

stirred and heated overnight at 70°C. The reaction mixture was poured
into water. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The
extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by
column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (90:10 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions

were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted
into the hydrochloride salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and
dried, yielding 4.5 parts (48%) of 6-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3Himidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-3,7-dimethyl5H-thiazolo[3,2-a]pyrimidin-5-one trihydrochloride.

monohydrate; mp. 248.6°C (151).

Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:

30	No.	L,	s	В	R <sup>1-a</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>	salt/base	mp.(°C)
35	152	H N-O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	N	1 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	206.2

5	No.	L'	8	В	R <sup>1-a</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>	salt/base	mp.(°C)
•	153	H N-O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N	*	132.6
10	154	H N-O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-сн <sub>3</sub> о-с <sub>6</sub> н <sub>4</sub>	СН	**	168.7
15	155	H N-O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	с <sub>6</sub> <sup>н</sup> 5-	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	211.1
20	156	H O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	с <sub>6</sub> <sup>н</sup> 5-	n	3(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	147.5
25	157	H N-O	3	сн <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> E <sub>4</sub> -	CH	base	186.6
	158	S N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH	***	192.6
30	159	H N N	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	CH	base	179.1
35	160	SN CH3	2	CE <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>6</sub> -	CH	**	194.9

							·	
5	No.	L'	<b>s</b>	В	R <sup>1-a</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>	salt/base	mp.(°C)
	161	CI°F°	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	***	174.7
10	162	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	СН <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	**	186.9
15	163	S N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl	СН	- 2(СООН) <sub>2</sub> 2H <sub>2</sub> 0	164.7
20	164	N-O	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH	base	168.6
25	165	O'F°	2	CE <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	СН	2HC1.Н <sub>2</sub> O	240.1
30	166	S N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	СН	знс1.2н <sub>2</sub> о	197.4
	167	S N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl	СН	3HC1.2H <sub>2</sub> O	215.8

!								
	No.	L'	8	В	R <sup>1-a</sup>	a <sup>l</sup>	salt/base	mp.(°C)
5	168	S N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl	N	знс1.н <sub>2</sub> о	250.2
10	169	H O		ĊĦ <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl	N	base	198.2
15	170	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl	N	2НС1.Н <sub>2</sub> О	227.4
20	171	H N N-	2	CE <sub>2</sub>	2 <b>-</b> furanyl	N	base	199.2
25	172	H O	3	CE <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N	base	183.6
	173	S N CH 3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	N	3HC1.2H <sub>2</sub> O	186.8 (dec.)
30	174	CLF°	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	n	2HC1.H <sub>2</sub> O	204.3 (dec.)

5	No.	L'	8	В	R <sup>1-a</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>	salt/base	mp.(°C)
	175	CH3-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N-N	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl	СН	base .	175.2
10	176	CH <sup>3</sup> -N N N-	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl	N	2HC1.H <sub>2</sub> O	182.1
15	177	δ					3HC1.H <sub>2</sub> O	229.7
20	178	S N CH3						183.6
25	179	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	n	2HC1.Н <sub>2</sub> O	240.9
30	180	CH -CH 3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	N	2 1/2(COOH). H <sub>2</sub> O	163.1
	181	CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub> N S-	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	.4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	161.0

5	No.	. L'	8	В	R <sup>1-a</sup>	λ <sup>1</sup>	salt/base	тр.(°С)
•	182	N CH 3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH .	base .	101.2
10	183	N N	1	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	base	164.3
15	184	N	1	CE 2	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	3(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	161.4
20	185	(I°F°	2	0	4-F-C6 <sup>H</sup> 4-	СН	2HC1	194.8
25	186	H N-O	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienyl-	CH	base	196.0
30	187	H N- N-	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolyl-	· CH	base	210.6

\* : (E)-2-butenedioate salt (2:3).monohydrate
\*\* : (E)-2-butenedioate salt (2:3)
\*\*\* : (E)-2-butenedioate salt (1:2)

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

Comp.	.t.	8	В	R <sup>1-a</sup>	Al	base or	mp.
No.						salt	°c
188 (4-F	'-C6H4)2-CH-	3	0	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	2HNO <sub>3</sub>	140.3
189 4-CH	3 <sup>0-C</sup> 6 <sup>H</sup> 4-	2	CH <sub>2</sub>		N	2(COOH)	159.4
	3 <sup>0-C</sup> 6 <sup>H</sup> 4-		٥		СН	*	155.2
191 4-CH	3 <sup>0-C</sup> 6 <sup>H</sup> 4	2	CH <sub>2</sub>		СН	**	223.8
	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH-		CH <sub>2</sub>		N	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	144.1
193 (4 <b>-</b> F	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH-	3	CH <sub>2</sub>		N	2(COOH)2	134.9
	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH-			4-CH3OC6H4-	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	126.7
195 (4 <b>-</b> F	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH-	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	182.2
196 (4 <b>-</b> F	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH-	3	CB <sub>2</sub>		CH	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	140.4
197 (4-F	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH-	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	C6H5-	N	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	190.2
198 4-CH	3 <sup>O-C</sup> 6 <sup>H</sup> 4			C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -	N	*.H <sub>2</sub> O	123.4
L99 2,3-	dihydro-1,4-	1	CH <sub>2</sub>	с <sub>6</sub> н <sub>5</sub> -	СН	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	224.5
benz	odioxin-2-yl						
200 4-CH	3 <sup>O-C</sup> 6 <sup>H</sup> 4	2	s	4-F-C6H4-	CH	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	148.1
	0-c(=0)-	1	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	2HC1.H <sub>2</sub> 0	.174.7

<sup>\* : (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate(1:2)

<sup>\*\*: (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate(1:1)

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

<sup>1-[(4-</sup>fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]-methyl]-lH-imidazo-[4,5-c]pyridine ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 193.0°C (202).

<sup>1-[(4-</sup>fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-

piperidinyl]methyl]- $l\underline{H}$ -imidazo-[4,5-b]pyridine ethanedioate(1:1); mp. 176.7°C (203).

3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo-[4,5-c]pyridine ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 191.6°C (204).

### Example 45

A mixture of 3.14 parts of 7-(2-bromoethyl)-3,4-dihydro-8-methyl-2H,6H-pyrimido[2,1-b][1,3]thiazin-6-one monohydrobromide, 3.5 parts of 3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo-10 [4,5-b]pyridin, 4 parts of sodium carbonate, 0.1 parts of potassium iodide and 90 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred and heated overnight at 70°C. After cooling, water was added. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography 15 over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 3.7 parts (61%) of 7-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-20 fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidiny1]ethy1]-3,4-dihydro-8-methy1-2H,6H-pyrimido[2,1-b][1,3]thiazin-6-one ethanedicate (1:2); mp. 190.5°C (205).

Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:

25

30

5								
	No.	L'	s	В	R <sup>1</sup>	a <sup>1</sup>	salt/base	mp.(°C)
10	206	H N-O	3	СН <sub>2</sub>	с <sub>6</sub> н <sub>5</sub> -	СН	base	160.7
<b>15</b>	: 207	H N-O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	**	145.7
20	208	H N-	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl- methyl-	СН	base	210.7
25	209	N- N- O	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	base	177.8
	210		1	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	2(СООН) <sub>2</sub>	198.6-
30	211	H N-	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH3C6H4CH2	СН	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub> .H <sub>2</sub> O	166.2
35	212		1	СН <sub>2</sub>	2-thienyl- methyl-	N	(COOH) 2	184.1

	No.	L'	8	В	RI	Al	salt/base	mp.(°C
5	213		1	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH3C6H4CH2	СН	*.1/2H <sub>2</sub> 0	202.0
,	214	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-P-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	195.8
10	215	H O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienyl- methyl-	N	1 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	173.3
15	216 CH <sub>3</sub>	S N CH 3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl- methyl-	СН	base	155.5
20	217		1	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-pyridinyl- methyl-	N	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	157.2
25	218	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl- methyl-	СН	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	115.2
	219 CH <sub>3</sub>	S N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C6 <sup>H</sup> 4 <sup>CH</sup> 2	- CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	139.8
30	220	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	- CH	base	173.8

	No.	Ľ,	8	В	R <sup>1</sup>	Al	salt/base	mp.(°C)
5	221	CH3 NNO	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl- methyl-	СН	2(СООН) <sub>2</sub> н <sub>2</sub> о	162.8
10	222	H <sup>3</sup> C-N N-N-	2	СH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl- methyl-	СН	•	192.4
15	223	H <sub>3</sub> C-N N N-	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	*	212.1
20	224	H N-O	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> - 1	N	base	192.7
	225	S N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> - N	N	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub> H <sub>2</sub> O	125.6
	226	N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl- C	СН	3(СООН) <sub>2</sub> .Н <sub>2</sub> О	125.6

30 \*: (E)-2-butenedioate (2:3)

\*\*: (E)-2-butenedioate (1:2)

-68~

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

5				<del></del>	
Comp. L'	s	R <sup>1</sup>	Al	base or	mp. °C
No.				salt	-6
10227 4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	*	190.5
228 4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CO-		4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	. N	*	152.6
229 4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -		2-furanylmethyl	CH	***	209.0
230 C H -CH-CH-	2	2-furanylmethyl	CH	**	167.8
231 4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	с <sub>6</sub> н <sub>5</sub> -	CH	•	195.8
15232 4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	2-thienylmethyl	CH	***	205.9-
. 3 0 4					207.6
233 (4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH-	3	С <sub>6</sub> <sup>н</sup> 5-	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	163.8-
					165.6
234 4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	2-pyridinylmethyl	N	**	170.5
20235 (4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH-	3	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	130.1
236 4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	N	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	155.7
237 C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -O-CO-NH-	2	2-thienylmethyl	N	base	-
238 4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	2-thienylmethyl	N	***	198.0
239 4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	4-CH3C6H4CH2	CH	***	214.5
25240 (4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH-	3	2-thienyl <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	N	(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	192.7
241 (4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH-	3	4-CH3C6H4CH2	CH	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	116.1
242 4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	CH <sub>3</sub>	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	164.3

<sup>\* : (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate (2:3)

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

ethyl [2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-l-piperidinyl)ethyl]carbamate dihydrobromide.hemihydrate; mp.

<sup>30 \*\* : (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate (1:2)

<sup>\*\*\*: (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate (1:1)

191.4°C (243); and

3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluoropheny1)methy1]-lH-benzimidazo1-2-y1]thio]-1-piperidiny1]-ethy1]-2-methy1-4H-pyrido[1,2-a]pyrimidin-4-one trihydrochloride.monohydrate; mp. 177.8°C (244).

### Example 46

A mixture of 1.9 parts of 1-(2-chloroethyl)-4-methoxybenzene,
4 parts of 1-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1Hbenzimidazole trihydrobromide, 8 parts of sodium carbonate, 0.1
parts of sodium iodide and 45 parts of N,N-dimethylacetamide was

10 stirred overnight at 75°C. After cooling, the reaction mixture was
poured into water and the product was extracted with 4-methyl-2pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The
residual oil was converted into the hydrochloride salt in 2-propanol
and the whole was evaporated. The sticky residue was crystallized

15 from acetonitrile, yielding 2.54 parts of 2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole dihydrochloride, monohydrate; mp. 154.6-156.1°C (245).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

25	No.	L'	s	В	R <sup>l-a</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>	salt/base	шр.(°С)
30	246	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH-	0	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolyl- methyl-	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	187.5- 189.7
	247	(4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH-	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolyl- methyl-	CH	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	193.3- 195.3
	248	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> O(C=O)NH-	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolyl- methyl-	CH	2(СООН) <sub>2</sub> .H <sub>2</sub> O	181.1

1	No.	L'	s	В	Rl-a	Al	salt/base	mp.(°C)
5	249	H O	3	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-pyridinyl- methyl-	N.	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub> ,H <sub>2</sub> O	159.6
	250	C H CH=CH-	1	CH <sub>2</sub>	н	СН	base	199.2
	251	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	н	CH	base	-
10	252	(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH-NH-C(=0)-	1	CH <sub>2</sub>	Ħ	CH	base	201.3
	253	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> OC(=0)-	1	сн <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C6H4CH2-	N.	2нс1.н <sub>2</sub> 0	147.8
	254	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	so <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	base	111.3
15	255	H O	3	s	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	base	140.6
20	256	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	CH 2	2-pyridinyl- methyl-	N	base	151.6
25	257	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienyl- methyl-	Сн	base	127.0
	258	CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-pyridinyl- methyl-	N	base	178.7
30	259	(I°I°	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienyl- methyl-	СН	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	216.1

	No.	L,	8	В	R1-a	Al	salt/base	mp.(°C)
5	260	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	3-furanyl- methyl-	Сн	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	161.3
10	261	N CH 3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolyl- methyl-	СН	base	179.5
	262	N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	- 4-thiazolyl- methyl-	СН	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub> H <sub>2</sub> O	187.2
15	263	. N CH3	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienyl- methyl-	СН	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	194.3
20	264	CN CH3	2	0	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	*	149.8
25	265	OT°	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolyl-methyl-	Сн	base	138.2
30	266 4	1-сн <sub>3</sub> 0-с <sub>6</sub> н <sub>4</sub> -	2	CH <sub>2</sub>	5-methyl-2- furanylmethyl		2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	179.9

<sup>\*: (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate salt(1:2)

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

$$L'-(CH_2)_{s}-N$$

$$R$$

$$R$$

$$N$$

$$N$$

$$A^{1}=A^{2}$$

$$A^{3}$$

$$A^{4}$$

No.	L,	s	R	В	A <sub>1</sub> =A <sub>2</sub> -A <sub>3</sub> =A <sub>4</sub>	iso- salt meric form	/base
-----	----	---	---	---	--	----------------------------	-------

								form		
10	267	4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-	-C <sub>H</sub> -	2	CH <sub>3</sub>	0	CH=CH-CH=CH	cis	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	160.2
							-CH=CH-CH=CH	trans	base	135.6
	269	4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-C=CH	- '	**	192.7
15	270	(N	CH <sub>3</sub>	2	H	СH <sub>2</sub>	CH=N-CH=CH	-	3(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	155.7
	ì									
•	2,1	3	6"4"	-		22	CH=CH-C=CH		2HCl. 1 1/2H <sub>2</sub> O	
20	272	N	TH3	2	н	CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-CH=N	-	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub> 1/2H <sub>2</sub> O	155.7
	273	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O	-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2	н	CH <sub>2</sub>	OCH3	-	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	163.9
25	274		N CH3	2	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-N=CH	-	2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	178.3
	ł						СН=СН-С≖СН	-	***	215.5
	276	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O	-C6 <sup>H</sup> 4	2	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	OH CH=CH	-	base	210.7

<sup>30 \*\* : (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate salt (2:3)

<sup>\*\*\*: (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate salt (1:1)

A mixture of 13.3 parts of 1-(2-chloroethyl)-4-methoxybenzene, 23.8 parts of 5(or 6)-fluoro-1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4piperidinylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazole, 14.8 parts of sodium carbonate, 0.5 parts of potassium iodide and 250 parts of  $\underline{N}, \underline{N}$ -dimethylacetamide was stirred at 100°C for 5 hours. After cooling, the mixture was poured into ice water. This mixture was extracted three times with methylbenzene. The combined organic layers were washed twice with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by 10 column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of ethyl acetate, ethanol and ammonia (96:4:1 by volume) as eluent. The first fraction was collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloride salt in 2,2'-oxybispropane and 2-propanol. The salt was filtered off and crystallized from a 15 mixture of 2-propanol and 2,2'-oxybispropane, yielding 9.2 parts (48%) of 5-fluoro-1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole dihydrochloride.dihydrate; mp. 101.9°C (277). The second fraction was collected and the eluent was evaporated. The

residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedioate salt in 2,2'-oxybispropane and 2-propanol. The salt was filtered off and crystallized from a mixture of 2-propanol and 2,2'-oxybispropane, yielding 6 parts (25%) of 6-fluoro-1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole; mp. 191.5°C (278).

# 25 Example 48

A mixture of 6.4 parts of 2-chloroacetonitrile, 27 parts of 3-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-2-(4-piperidinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridine, 13 parts of sodium carbonate and 450 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 1,1'-oxy-bisethane, yielding 19 parts (62%) of 4-[[3-[(4-methylphenyl)-methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidine-acetonitrile; mp. 131.3°C (279).

Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of

the appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared: 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinebutanenitrile (280);

4-{[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl}-l-piperidine-butanenitrile (281);

4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl-l-piperidinebutanenitrile (282).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

15	No.	R	В	R <sub>1</sub>	A <sub>1</sub> =A <sub>2</sub> -A <sub>3</sub> =A <sub>4</sub>	"C
	283	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C6H4-CH2	CH=CH-CH=CH	146.1
	284	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	CH=CH-CH=CH	141.4
	285	Ħ	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanylmethyl	CH=CH-CH=CH	152.5
20	286	H	0	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-CH=CH	<b>-</b> į
	287	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienylmethyl	CH=CH-CH=CH	- :
	288	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	3-pyridinylmethyl	CH=CH-CH=CH	-
	289	Ħ	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolylmethyl	CH=CH-CH=CH	91.2-93.0
	290	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	N=CH-CH=CH	98.9
25	291	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanylmethyl	N=CH-CH=CH	124.2
	292	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-pyridinylmethyl	N=CH-CH=CH	137.9
	293	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-CH=CH	129.8
	294	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	<b>H</b> .	CH=CH-CH=CH	205.4
	295	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-CH=CH	161.6
30	296	Ħ	CH <sub>2</sub>	C6H5-CH2	N=CH-CH=CH	140.0
	297	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-CH=CH	174.3
	298	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	N=CH-CH=CH	96.6
	299	H	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-CH=N	
	300*	CH <sub>3</sub>	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=CH-CH=CH	127.4
35	301	Ħ	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	CH=N-CH=CH	132.9

<sup>\* :</sup> cis-isomer

```
A mixture of 7.4 parts of 4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimi-
    dazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinebutanenitrile and 240 parts of
  methanol saturated with ammonia was hydrogenated at normal pressure
    and at room temperature with 3 parts of Raney-nickel catalyst. After
    the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was
    filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 7.33 parts
    (99%) of 4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-
10 1-piperidinebutanamine (302).
     . Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the
   appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:
   4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidine-
   ethanamine (E)-2-butenedioate(1:3); mp. 210.9°C (303);
15 4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3<u>H</u>-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-
   piperidineethanamine (E)-2-butenedioate (1:3); mp. 203.0°C (304);
   4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-
   piperidinebutanamine (305);
   4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-
20 piperidinebutanamine (306);
   4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-\frac{H}{2}-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-
   methyl]-l-piperidineethanamine (307);
   4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl]-
```

25 <u>cis-4-[[l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-3-methyl-l-piperidineethanamine (309).</u>

methyl]-l-piperidineethanamine (308);

30

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

	Comp.	В	R <sup>1</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>
	No.			
10	310	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	СН
	311	_	C6H5-	CH
	312	_	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН
	313	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienylmethyl	CH
	314	CH <sub>2</sub>	3-pyridinylmethyl	СН
15	315	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazolylmethyl	CH
	316	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -	N
	317	CH <sub>2</sub>		N
	318	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-сн <sub>3</sub> о-с <sub>6</sub> н <sub>4</sub> -сн <sub>2</sub> -	CH
	319	CH <sub>2</sub>	H	сн -
20	320	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH
	321	CH <sub>2</sub>	С <sub>6</sub> <sup>Н</sup> 5 <sup>-СН</sup> 2 <sup>-</sup>	CH
	322	CH <sub>2</sub>	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -	N
	323	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -	N
	324	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -	n
25				

# Example 50

A mixture of 20.7 parts of ethyl [2-[4-[[3-(2-thienylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate,

22.1 parts of potassium hydroxide and 200 parts of 2-propanol was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was evaporated.

Water was added to the residue. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated, yielding 13 parts (76%) of 4-[[3-(2-thienylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinethanamine (325).

In a sililar manner there was also prepared: 4-[[1-{(4-fluorophenyl)methyl}-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl}thio]-l-piperidineethanamine (326).

# Example 51

- A mixture of 12 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benz-imidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l'-(phenylmethyl)[1,4'-bipiperidine] and 200 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and 50°C with 3 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedioate salt in methanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 7.87 parts (51.3%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-[1,4'-bipiperidine] (E)-2-butenedioate(1:2); mp. 226.9°C (327).
- 15 Example 52

A mixture of 3 parts of 2-chloro-lH-benzimidazole, 7.3 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineethanamine and 0.1 parts of potassium iodide was stirred for 1 hour in an oil bath at 160°C. After cooling to room temperature, the 20 whole was pulverized and stirred in a mixture of water, ammonium hydroxide and trichloromethane. The layers were separated. The organic layer was washed twice with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of hexane, trichloromethane, methanol and 25 ammonium hydroxide (45:45:9:1 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedicate salt in 2-propanone. The salt was filtered off and crystallized from ethanol. The product was filtered off and dried in vacuo at 70°C overnight, yielding 5 parts 30 (38.0%) of  $\underline{N}$ -[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-l $\underline{H}$ -benzimidazol-2yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]lH-benzimidazol-2-amine (E)-2butenedioate(2:3); mp. 134.5°C (328).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]
methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]lH-benzimidazol-2-amine;mp. 161.9°C(329).

A mixture of 3 parts of 2-methylthio-thiazolo[5,4-b]pyridine and 5.5 parts of 4-{[1-{(4-fluorophenyl)methyl}-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl}-methyl}-1-piperidineethanamine was stirred for 24 hours at 140°C.

The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 1 part (8.6%) of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiazolo[5,4-b]pyridin-2-amine ethanedioate(1:3); mp. 148.2°C (330).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

2-[[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]
1-piperidinyl]ethyl]amino]-4(lH)-pyrimidinone; mp. 164.0°C (331);

N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l
piperidinyl]ethyl]thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine ethanedioate(1:3);

mp. 188.0°C (332).

#### Example 54

A mixture of 1.7 parts of 2-chloropyrimidine, 5.7 parts of

4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-1piperidineethanamine, 1.3 parts of sodium hydrogen carbonate and 120
parts of ethanol was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction
mixture was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue

was taken up in trichloromethane. The solution was washed with
water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by
column-chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions
were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was
converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was
filtered off and dried, yielding 3.7 parts (44.6%) of N-[2-[4-[[1[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]thio]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyrimidinamine ethanedioate (1:1); mp. 189.2°C (333).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

Comp.	. L'	B	R1-a	Al	base or salt	mp. °C
334	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	СН	base	103.0
335	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	СН	•	159.6
336	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sup>2</sup>	2-thienyl-	СН	**	184.6-188.6
337	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sup>2</sup>	3-pyridinyl-	СН	4(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	176.1-180.5
338	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-thiazoly1-	СН	4(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	192.3-194.0
339	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-furanyl-	N	3(COOH)2	107.3
340	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-pyridinyl-	N	3 1/2 (COOH)	151.7
341	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> OC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	**	182.2
342	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienyl-	N	**.H <sub>2</sub> O	152.9
343	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СН	2 1/2(COOH)	160.5
344	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	С <sub>6</sub> н <sub>5</sub> -	СН	**	194.8
345	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	С <sub>6</sub> н <sub>5</sub> -	N	3(COOH)2	172.5
346	2-pyrimidinyl	0	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> - ·	СН	base	155.1

<sup>\* : (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate salt (1:3)

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l'-(2-pyrimidinyl)-[1,4'-bipiperidine] ethanedioate(2:7); mp. 169.7°C (347);

N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyrimidinamine ethanedioate(2:5); mp. 173.4°c (348);

cis-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]3-methyl-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyrimidinamine; mp. 94.0°C (349);

35 6-chloro- $N^4$ -[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-

<sup>25 \*\* : (</sup>E)-2-butenedioate salt (2:3)

y1]methy1]-1-piperidiny1]ethy1]-4,5-pyrimidinediamine (350); and N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluoropheny1)methy1]-3H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-y1]-methy1]-1-piperidiny1]-ethy1]-2-pyrimidinamine ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 192.5°C (351).

# 5 Example 55

A mixture of 3.3 parts of 2-bromothiazole, 5.09 parts of

4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1piperidineethanamine, 3 parts of sodium carbonate and 45 parts of
N,N-dimethylacetamide was stirred overnight at 130°C. The reaction

10 mixture was poured into water and the product was extracted twice
with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and
evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over
silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol
saturated with ammonia (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure

15 fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue
was converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was
filtered off and dried, yielding 2.5 parts (27%) of 4-[[3-(2furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-N-(2-thiazolyl)-1piperidineethanamine ethanedioate (1:3); mp. 173.0°C (352).

20

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

Comp.	L'	В	R <sup>1</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>	base or	mp.
30						
353	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	base	115.6
354	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -	CH	base	59.5
355	2-thiazolyl	0	4-F-C6H4CH2-	CH	base	132.1
356	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienylmethyl	CH	3(СООН) <sub>2</sub> Н <sub>2</sub> О	135.6
35 357	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	N	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub> H <sub>2</sub> O	150.9

Comp	. L'	В	R <sup>1</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>	base or	mp. °C
5 358	2-pyrimidinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	н	СН	base	199.4
359	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	H	СН	base	180.4
360	5-chloro-2- pyridinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	base	-
361	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	2-thienylmethyl-	N	3(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	129.4
10 362	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>		N	3 1/2(COOH)	129.4
363	2-thiazolyl		C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	4(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	142.7
364	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>		СН	3(COOH) <sub>2</sub> H <sub>2</sub> O	138.6
365	2-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>		N	base	144.7
366	2-NO <sub>2</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>		4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	base	120.5
15 367	2-benzothiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	3 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	167.1
368	2-pyrazinyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	СН	1/2 H <sub>2</sub> O 2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	173.6
369	9-methyl-9H- purin-6-yl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	4HC1.H <sub>2</sub> O	210.3
20 370	9H-purin-6-yl	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	base	186.5
371	8-OH, 9-CH <sub>3</sub> -9H- purin-6-yl .	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	2 1/2(COOH) <sub>2</sub>	179.7
372	8,9-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> - 9H-purin-6-y1	CH <sub>2</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> -	CH	base	134.3
25						

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyrazinamine ethanedioate(1:2); mp.
157.4°C (373).

# Example 56

A mixture of 1.7 parts of 2-chloropyrimidine, 5.5 parts of 4-[[l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-dineethanamine, 2.12 parts of sodium carbonate, 0.1 parts of potassium iodide and 90 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred

30

overnight at 60°-70°C. Water was added and the product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (95:5 by volume) saturated with ammonia, as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 1,1'-oxybisethane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 2.6 parts (40%) of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2
pyrimidinamine; mp. 125.1°C (374).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

N-[2-[4-[(1-phenyl-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]2-pyrimidinamine (E)-2-butenedioate (1:1); mp. 211.4°C (375);

N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]15 methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyrimidinamine (E)-2-butenedioate
(2:3); mp. 162.4°C (376);
4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(1-methyl-4-nitro-lH-imidazol-5-yl)-1-piperidineethanamine; mp. 131.1°C (377);

- 6-chloro-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-3-pyridazinamine; mp. 175.5°C (378);
  N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1piperidinyl]ethyl]-4-nitro-3-pyridinamine, 1-oxide; mp. 135.1°C
  (379);
- 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l'-(1-methyl-4-nitro-lH-imidazol-5-yl)-[l,4'-bipiperidine]; mp. 144.0°C (380); and 4-chloro-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]-methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-l-phthalazinamine; mp. 169.7°C (381).
- 30 Example 57

To a stirred and cooled (0°-10°C) mixture of 18.3 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidine-ethanamine, 7.5 parts of N.N-diethylethanamine and 225 parts of tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise a solution of 8.15 parts of 2,6-dichloro-4-methylpyrimidine in a small amount of tetrahydro-

furan. Upon completion, stirring was continued overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated. Water was added to the residue and the product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by HPLC over silica gel using a mixture of methylbenzene, ethanol and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (85:14:1 by volume) as eluent. The first fraction was collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 2.2 parts (6.5%) of 4-chloro-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benz-imidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-6-methyl-2-pyrimidinamine ethanedicate (1:2); mp. 165.8°C (382).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

2-chloro-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]
methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-6-methyl-4-pyrimidinamine; mp. 142.9°C

(383);

6-chloro-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]
methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-4-pyrimidinamine ethanedioate(2:5); mp.

174.4°C (384).

# 20 Example 58

A mixture of 4 parts of 5-(2-bromoethoxy)-1-methyl-1H-tetrazole,

5.5 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimdazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine, 2.3 parts of sodium carbonate and 45
parts of N.N-dimethylformamide was stirred overnight at 70°C. The

25 reaction mixture was poured into water. The product was extracted
with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and
evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over
silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (95:5 by
volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent

30 was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt
in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 1.3 parts
(13%) of 3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]2-oxazolidinone ethanedioate(2:5);
mp. 147.9°C (385).

To a stirred mixture of 22 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineethanol dihydrochloride and 450 parts of trichloromethane were added dropwise 12 parts of thionyl chloride. Upon completion, stirring was continued overnight at reflux temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was stirred in methylbenzene. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 13 parts (56.6%) of 2-[[1-(2-chloroethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazole dihydrochloride (386).

#### Example 60

A mixture of 2.0 parts of thiazolo[5,4-b]pyridine-2-thiol, 2 parts of a sodium hydride dispersion 50% and 45 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred for 2 hours. 6.5 Parts of 2-[[1-(2-15 chloroethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazole dihydrochloride were added portionwise. Upon completion, stirring was continued over weekend. Water was added. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column 20 chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in methanol. The salt was filtered off and crystallized from methanol. The product was filtered off and 25 dried, yielding 1.7 parts (20%) of 2-[[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]thio]thiazolo[5,4-b]pyridine ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 199.0°C (387).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

2-[[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]30 l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thio]thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine; mp. 121.0°C (388).

Example 61

To a stirred and warm mixture of 3.8 parts of 4-[[3-[(4-fluoro-phenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineacet-amide and 24 parts of N,N-dimethylacetamide were added portionwise

35 0.4 parts of a sodium hydride dispersion 59.7% at 40°C. The mixture

was heated to 80°C and stirred for 15 minutes at 80°C. 1.2 Parts of 2-chloropyrimidine were added and stirring was continued for 30 minutes at 80°C. After cooling to 40°, another 0.4 parts of a sodium hydride dispersion 59.7% were added and after stirring for 15 minutes at 80°C, another 1.2 parts of 2-chloropyrimidine were added. The whole was stirred for 30 minutes at 80°C and then cooled to 40°C. Another 0.4 parts of a sodium hydride dispersion 59.7% were

added and after stirring for 15 minutes at 80°C, another 1.2 parts

of 2-chloropyrimidine were added. Stirring was continued for 15
10 minutes at 80°C. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature
and poured into 150 parts of water. The product was extracted three
times with dichloromethane. The combined extracts were washed three
times with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was

purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane, methanol and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (96:3:1 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedioate salt in 2-propanone. The salt was allowed to crystallize at -20°C. It was filtered off and dried, yielding 0.4

parts of 4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-N-(2-pyrimidinyl)-l-piperidineacetamide (E)-2-butene-dioate(1:2); mp. 159.0°C (389).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(2-pyrimidinyloxy)ethyl]
4-piperidinyl]oxy]-lH-benzimidazole (E)-2-butenedioate (1:2); mp.

162.7°C (390);

1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(2-pyrimidinyloxy)ethyl]-4-.

piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(1:3); mp. 161.4°C

(391);

30 l-(2-furanylmethyl)-2-[[1-[2-(2-pyrimidinyloxy)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate (1:2). monohydrate; mp.
179.3°C (392);
l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(2-pyrimidinyloxy)ethyl]-4piperidinyl]thio]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate (1:1); mp. 186.9°C
35 (393); and

3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(2-pyridinylmethoxy)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]-methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine trihydrochloride; mp. 129.8°C (394).

#### Example 62

To a stirred and cooled (-10°C) mixture of 20.8 parts of carbon disulfide, 9 parts of N.N'-methanetetraylbis[cyclohexanamine] and 135 parts of tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise a solution of 15 parts of 4-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine in tetrahyrofuran at a temperature below -10°C.

The reaction mixture was allowed to reach room temperature and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 15 parts (89%) of 2-[[1-(2-isothiocyanatoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole (395).

15 In a similar manner there were also prepared:

20

	Comp.	R <sup>1</sup>	A <sup>1</sup>
	No.		
	396	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	СН
25	·397	2-thienylmethyl	CH
	398	2-furanylmethyl	N
	399	2-furanylmethyl	СН
	400	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	N
	401	2-pyridinylmethyl	N
30	402	2-thienylmethyl	N
	403	4-CH <sub>3</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	СН
	404	4-CH <sub>3</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub>	n

A mixture of 5.2 parts of 3,4-pyridinediamine, 19 parts of 2-[[1-(2-isothiocyanatoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-[(4-methyl-phenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazole and 225 parts of tetrahydrofuran was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was evaporated, yielding 24 parts (100%) of N-(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)-N'-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]-ethyl]thiourea (405).

Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of the 10 appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:  $\underline{N}$ -(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)- $\underline{N}$ '-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-l $\underline{H}$ benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (406);  $\underline{N}$ -(4-amino-3-pyridiny1)- $\underline{N}$ '-[2-[4-[[1-(2-thienylmethy1)-lHbenzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (407); 15 N-(4-amino-3-pyridiny1)-N'-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethy1)-3H-imidazo-[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (408); N-(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)-N'-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (409);  $\underline{N}$ -(4-amino-3-pyridiny1)- $\underline{N}$ '-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluoropheny1)methy1]-3H-20 imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (410);N-(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)-N'-[2-[4-[[3-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo-[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (411);  $\underline{N}$ -(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)- $\underline{N}$ '-[2-[4-[[3-(2-thienylmethyl)-3 $\underline{H}$ -imidazo-25 [4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (412); N-(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)-N'-[2-[4-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (413); and  $\underline{N}$ -(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)- $\underline{N}$ '-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-3 $\underline{H}$ imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea 30 (414).

#### Example 64

A mixture of 2 parts of N-(4-amino-3-pyridinyl)-N'-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]-ethyl]thiourea, 3.3 parts of mercury(II) oxide, 0.1 parts of sulfur and 40 parts of ethanol was stirred and refluxed overnight. The

```
reaction mixture was filtered hot over Hyflo and the filtrate was
    evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedioate
    salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 1.8
   parts (57%) of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-
    2-y1]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine
    (E)-2-butenedioate (1:3); mp. 184.7°C (415).
       In a similar manner there were also prepared:
    N-[2-[4-[[1-(2-thienylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
    dinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine (E)-2-butenedioate
10 (1:3). monohydrate; mp. 198.2°C (416);
    N-[2-[4-[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-
    l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine
    (E)-2-butenedioate (1:3). monohydrate; mp. 174.6°C (417);
    N-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
15 dinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine ethanedioate (1:4);
    mp. 201.1°C (418);
    N-[2-[4-[[3-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-
    methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine
    ethanedioate (1:4); mp. 189.7°C (419);
20 N-[2-[4-[[3-(2-thienylmethy1)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-y1]-
    methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine
    ethanedicate (2:5); mp. 154.5°C (420);
    N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-
    l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo-[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine ethanedioate
25 (1:3); mp. 203.5°C (421);
    N-[2-[4-[[1-(phenylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperi-
     dinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine ethanedioate (1:4);
     mp. 199.0°C (422);
     N-[2-[4-[3-[(4-methylphenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-
 30 methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-lH-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine
     ethanedicate (1:5); mp. 160.1°C (423); and
     \underline{N}-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-
     methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-amine
     ethanedioate (2:5); mp. 211.2°C (424).
```

To a stirred and refluxing mixture of 3.7 parts of 4-[[3-[(4fluorophenyl)methyl}-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineethanamine and 90 parts of methylbenzene were added dropwise 1.1 parts of 2-pyridinecarboxyaldehyde using a water separator. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 20 hours at reflux. After cooling to 50°C, 44 parts of ethanol were added. At a temperature of 40°C, 0.4 parts of sodium borohydride were added portionwise. Upon completion, the whole was stirred for 2 hours at 45°C. The reaction 10 mixture was poured into ice water and acetic acid while hot. The mixture was treated with ammonium hydroxide. The product was extracted three times with methylbenzene. The organic layer was washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of 15 trichloromethane, methanol and ammonium hydroxide (90:9:1 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedioate salt in 2-propanone. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 3.0 parts (43.4%) of N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-20 imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2pyridinemethanamine (E)-2-butenedioate(1:2); mp. 160.7°C (425). In a similar manner there were also prepared: 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(phenylmethyl)-1-piperidineethanamine (426); and 25  $\underline{N}$ -[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyridinemethanamine (E)-2-butenedioate(1:2); mp. 145.1°C (427).

# Example 66

A mixture of 1.1 parts of isothiocyanatomethane, 5.5 parts of

4-[[1-[(4-fluoropheny1)methy1]-1H-benzimidazo1-2-y1]methy1]-1piperidineethanamine and 90 parts of tetrahydrofuran was stirred
overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaported.
The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel
using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (90:10 by volume)

35 as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was

evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 4 parts (43%) of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-N'-methylthiourea ethanedioate (1:2); mp. 169.0°C (428).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

N-ethyl-N'-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyr-idin-2-yl]-methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]urea; mp. 148.6°C (429); and

N-ethyl-N'-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]urea; mp. 111.4°C (430).

# Example 67

5

To a stirred mixture of 1.92 parts of 3-thiophenecarboxylic acid, 3.03 parts of N.N-diethylethanamine and 260 parts of dichloromethane were added 3.82 parts of 2-chloro-l-methylpyridinium iodide. The 15 whole was stirred for 1 hour and then 5.5 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineethanamine were added. After stirring for 2 hours, water was added and the product was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined extracts were washed twice with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The 20 residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol and acetonitrile. The salt was filtered 25 off and crystallized from methanol. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 3.5 parts (35.5%) of N-[2-[4-[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)+methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-3-thiophenecarboxamide ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 177.9°C (431).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-3-furancarboxamide; mp. 139.9°C (432);

N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1-methyl-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxamide ethanedioate (2:5); mp. 164.9°C (433);

```
N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-
                  piperidinyl]ethyl]-3-furancarboxamide ethanedioate(2:5).hemihydrate;
                  mp. 139.7°C (434);
                   [2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-
                 methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-3-pyridinecarboxylate ethanedioate
               (1:3); mp. 149.3°C (435);
                   3-amino-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-benzimidazol-2-yl]-l-b
                 methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyrazinecarboxamide ethanedioate
                   (1:2); mp. 166.8°C (436);
10 \underline{N}-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-
                 piperidinyl] = 4-thiazolecarboxamide ethanedioate(1:2); mp.
                 168.1°C (437);
                \underline{\text{N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-l$H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-1}}
                 piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-methoxy-3-pyridinecarboxamide ethanedioate
15 (2:5); mp. 182.7°C (438);
                N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methyll[h]methy
                 piperidinyl]ethyl]-Y-oxo-2-thiopheneacetamide ethanedioate(1:2);
                 mp. 180.2°C (439);
                20 piperidinyl]ethyl]-3-thiopheneacetamide
                                                                                                                                                                                                         ethanedioate(2:5); mp.
                 185.5°C (440);
                 N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyllmethyll
                 piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-methoxy-5-(1-oxobutyl)benzamide ethanedioate
                  (1:2) hemihydrate; mp. 161.3°C (441);
25 \underline{N}-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-\underline{H}-benzimidazol-2-yl]mthyl]-
                 l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-l-methyl-lH-indole-2-carboxamide; mp. 137.3°C
                N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-
                piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-thiophenecarboxamide ethanedioate(1:2); mp.
30 157.6°C (443);
                N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-
                piperidinyl]=4-hydroxy-2-quinolinecarboxamide; mp. 262.4°C
                 (444);
                N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-
35
```

piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-oxo-2H-1-benzopyran-3-carboxamide; mp. 134.0°C (445);

 $\underline{N}$ -[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-thiazolecarboxamide ethanedioate(1:2); mp.

5 178.0°C (446); and

N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-4-pyridinecarboxamide ethanedioate(1:3) monohydrate; mp. 164.3°C (447).

### Example 68

A mixture of 5.5 parts of 4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-10 imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineethanamine, 2.6 parts of 1,1'-carbonylbis[1H-imidazole] and 180 parts of tetrahydrofuran was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. Gazeous N-methylmethanamine was bubbled through this mixture for 30 minutes (exothermic 15 reaction : the cooler was provided with a CaCl tube). The whole was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in 2-propanone. The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in water. Ammonium hydroxide 20 was added till an alkaline solution was obtained. The product was extracted twice with methylbenzene. The combined extracts were washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane, methanol and ammonium hydroxide (90:9:1 by volume) 25 as eluent. The pure and the less pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (HPLC) over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane, methanol and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (96:3:1 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent 30 was evaporated using a water bath at 30°C. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in 2-propanone. The salt was allowed to crystallize while stirring. It was filtered off and dried in vacuo at 60°C, yielding 2.0 parts (20.0%) of M'-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]-35 ethyl]-N.N-dimethylurea ethanedioate(2:5); mp. 94.2°C (448).

5

A mixture of 25 parts of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-(2-isothiocyanatoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole and 160 parts of methanol saturated with ammonia was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated, yielding 25 parts (100%) of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea (449).

Example 70

A mixture of 6.4 parts of methyl N-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)-N'
methylcarbamimidothioate monohydroiodide, 7.3 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineethanamine and 80 parts of 2-propanol was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was evaporated, yielding 12.77 parts (99%) of N-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)-N'-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]N''-methylguanidine monohydroiodide (450).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

N-(2,2-dimethoxyethy1)-N'-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluoropheny1)methy1]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methy1]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]guanidine mono
bydroiodide (451).

# Example 71

A mixture of 12.77 parts of N-(2,2-dimethoxyethyl)-N'[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1piperidinyl]ethyl]-N''-methylguanidine monohydroiodide and 150 parts

25 of a hydrochloric acid solution 10% was stirred and refluxed for 2
hours. Ice water was added and the whole was treated with a sodium
hydroxide solution. The product was extracted with dichloromethane.
The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was
purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of

30 trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by
volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent
was evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedioate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried,
yielding 3 parts (21%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-1-piperidine-

ethanamine (E)-2-butenedioate (1:2) monohydrate; mp. 119.6°C (452).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

4-{[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(1H-imidazol-2-yl)-1-piperidineethanamine ethanedioate(1:2).monohydrate

mp. 126.1°C (453).

# Example 72

A mixture of 3.3 parts of 2-bromo-1-phenylethanone, 7 parts of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-110 piperidinyl]ethyl]thiourea, 4 parts of potassium carbonate and 90 parts of tetrahydrofuran was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was filtered over Hyflo and the filtrate was evaporated. The reaction mixture was poured into water. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 2.8 parts (33.3%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(4-phenyl-2-thiazolyl)-1-piperidineethanamine; mp. 122.2°C (454).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

ethyl 2-[[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol25 2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]amino]-4-thiazolecarboxylate

ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 179.5°C (455); and

4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(4
methyl-2-thiazolyl)-l-piperidineethanamine ethanedioate(2:7); mp.

148.6°C (456).

#### 30 Example 73

A mixture of 6 parts of ethyl 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineacetate and 120 parts of a
hydrochloric acid solution 6N was stirred and refluxed overnight.

The reaction mixture was cooled and filtered. The filtrate was
evaporated and the semi-solid residue was taken up in about 120

parts of 2-propenol. The solution was filtered and about 70 parts of 2,2'-oxybispropane were added to the filtrate. After stirring for 2 hours at room temperature, the precipitated product was filtered off, dried overnight in vacuo at 80°C and pulverized in a mortar, yielding 3 parts (52%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidineacetic acid dihydrochloride. monohydrate; mp. 207.4°C (457). Example 74

A mixture of 85 parts of 4-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H
10 benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]-2-butanone and 600 parts of acetic acid was acidified with glacial acetic acid saturated with hydrogen bromide. A solution of 32.6 parts of bromine in acetic acid was added dropwise. Upon completion, stirring was continued overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated.

15 The residue was stirred in 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding lll parts (80%) of 1-bromo-4-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]-2-butanone trihydrobromide (458).

Example 75

20 A mixture of 0.75 parts of ethanethioamide, 7 parts of 1-bromo-4-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]-2-butanone dihydrobromide and 80 parts of methanol was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated. Water was added. The whole was treated with 25 sodium hydroxide. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (97:3 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent 30 was evaporated. The residue was further purified by column chromatography (HPLC) over silica gel using a mixture of hexane, trichloromethane and methanol (45:45:10 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in ethanol and 35 2-propanone. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 2 parts

(33%) of 1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(2-methyl-4-thiazolyl)-ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazole ethanedioate(2:5); mp. 124.1°C (459).

# Example 76

- To a stirred mixture of 5.5 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-5 methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine and 90 parts of tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise a solution of 3.8 parts of methyl 2-isothiocyanatobenzenecarboxylate in 18 parts of tetrahydrofuran (exothermic reaction). Upon completion, stirring was 10 continued for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 15 acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and recrystallized from methanol. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 3.6 parts (46%) of 3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-2-thioxo-4(1H)-quinazolinone; mp. 218.2°C (460).
- In a similar manner there were also prepared:

  3-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-2-thioxo-4(lH)-quinazolinone; mp.

  216.6°C (461);
  - 3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-
- l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-6-methyl-2-thioxothieno[2,3-d]pyrimidin-4(1H)-one dihydrochloride. monohydrate; mp. 224.3°C (462);
  3-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-2-thioxo-4(1H)quinazolinone; mp. 204.2°C (463);
- 30 3-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]-ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-6-methyl-2-thioxothieno[2,3-d]pyrimidin-4(lH)-one; mp. 192.7°C (464); and
  3-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-6-methyl-2-thioxothieno[2,3-d]35 pyrimidin-4(lH)-one; mp. 197.1°C (465).

To a stirred mixture of 4.9 parts of 2H-3,1-benzoxagine-2,4(1 $\underline{\text{H}}$ )-dione and 45 parts of  $\underline{\text{N}},\underline{\text{N}}$ -dimethylformamide were added dropwise 10.15 parts of 4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-y1]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine and 45 parts of C at 50°C. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 4 hours at 70°C. After cooling, the reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by 10 volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 1,1'-oxybisethane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 10 parts (73%) of 2-amino- $\underline{N}$ -[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-l $\underline{H}$ -benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide; mp. 125.7°C (466). 15 In a similar manner there were also prepared: N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]ethyl]-2-(methylamino)benzamide; mp. 84.3°C (467);  $2-a\min_{\underline{N}}-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-l\underline{H}-benzimidazol-2-y$ methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide; mp. 126.9°C (468); 20 2-amino-N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide (469); N-[2-[4-[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-(methylamino)benzamide ethanedicate (2:5); mp. 172.3°C (470); 25 2-amino-N-[4-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]butyl]benzamide (471); 2-amino-N-[4-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethy1)-lH-benzimidazol-2-y1]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]butyl]benzamide; mp. 127.7°C (472); 2-amino-N-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-30 methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide; mp. 137.1°C (473);  $\underline{N}$ -[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3 $\underline{H}$ -imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-(methylamino)benzamide; mp. 81.4°C (474); and 2-amino-N-[4-[4-[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]-

methyl]-l-piperidinyl]butyl]benzamide (475);

35 N-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piper-

```
idiny1]-ethy1]-2-(methylamino)benzamide (476);
2-amino-N-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-
2-y1]-methyl]-1-piperidinyl]-ethyl]benzamide ethanedioate(1:2);
mp.161.5°C (477);
```

- 2-amino-N-[2-[4-[[1-(2-thienylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide; mp. 143.5°C; (478)

  2,3-dihydro-2,2-dimethyl-3-[2-[4-[[3-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-4(1H)-quinazolinone
  ethanedioate(1:1); mp.210.2°C (479); and
- 2-amino-N-[2-[4-[(1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]-oxy]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide; mp. 141.7°C (480).

  Example 78

A mixture of 4 parts of 2-amino-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide,

- 15. 20 parts of acetic acid anhydride and 40 parts of water was stirred and heated overnight at 120°C. After cooling, ice water was added.

  The whole was treated with ammonium hydroxide. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the (E)-2-butenedicate
- 20 salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 3.7 parts (72%) of 3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-methyl-4(3H)-quinazolinone (E)-2-butenedioate (1:1); mp. 210.3°C (481).

Following the same procedure and using equivalent amounts of
the appropriate starting materials, there were also prepared:

3-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-methyl-4(3H)-quinazolinone trihydrochloride.

dihydrate; mp. 219.5°C (482);

3-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]30 methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-methyl-4(3H)-quinazolinone; mp.
147.6°C (483); and

3-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-methyl-4(3H)-quinazolinone (E)-2-butenedioate (1:3); mp. 184.1°C (484).

A mixture of 5 parts of 2-amino-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide, 80 parts of 2-propanone and 1.9 parts of ethanedioic acid was stirred for 1 hour at reflux temperature. After cooling, the product was filtered off and dried, yielding 4.8 parts (77%) of 3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]oxy]-l-piperidinyl]-ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-2,2-dimethyl-4(lH)-quinazolinone ethanedioate (1:1); mp. 166.5°C (485).

#### 10 Example 80

To a stirred mixture of 8 parts of N-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanyl-methyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-(methylamino)benzamide, 13 parts of N,N-diethylethanamine and 130 parts of dichloromethane was added dropwise a solution of 2.3 parts of carbonothioic dichloride in dichloromethane. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of methanol and ethanol. The product was filtered off and boiled in methanol. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 3 parts (34.3%) of 3-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-l-methyl-2-thioxo-4(lH)-quinazolinone; mp. 169.2°C (486).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]
1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-methyl-2-thioxo-4(lH)quinazolinone; mp. 147.5°C (487); and

3-[2-[4-[[3-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-methyl-2-thioxo-4(lH)quinazolinone; mp. 176.1°C (488).

## 30 Example 81

A mixture of 10.3 parts of 2-amino-N-[4-[4-[[1-[(4-fluoro-phenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]-butyl]-benzamide, 3.2 parts of 1,1'-carbonylbis[lH-imidazole] and 180 parts of tetrahydrofuran was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by column

chromatography over silica gel using first a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol saturated with ammonia (97:3 by volume) and then a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol saturated with ammonia (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanone, yielding 3.8 parts (35.5%) of 3-[4-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]butyl]-2,4(1H,3H)-quinazolinedione; mp. 187.3°C (489). Example 82

- To a stirred mixture of 3.88 parts of 2-amino-N-[4-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]butyl]-benzamide, 2 parts of N,N-diethylethanamine and 90 parts of tetrahydrofuran were added dropwise 1.64 parts of trichloromethyl carbonochloridate. Upon completion, stirring was continued
- overnight. Another portion of 1.6 parts of B was added and the whole was stirred overnight. The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. Water was added to the residue. The solution was treated with ammonium hydroxide; The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 3 parts (73%) of

product was filtered off and dried, yielding 3 parts (73%) of 3-[4-[4-[(1-(2-furanylmethyl)-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]butyl]-2,4(lH,3H)-quinazolinedione; mp. 185.5°C (490).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

25 3-[4-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]butyl]-2,4-(lH,3H)-quinazolinedione; mp. 146.6°C (491).

Example 82

To a stirred mixture of 5.1 parts of 4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine and 270 parts of tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise a solution of 3.8 parts of ethyl 2-isothiocyanatobenzoate in tetrahydrofuran. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (97:3 by volume) as eluent. The pure

fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanone. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 1.4 parts (18.6%) of 3-[2-[4-[(3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-2-thioxo-4(lH)-quinazolinone; mp. 192.0°C (492).

# Example 84

A mixture of 6 parts of N¹-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1,2-benzenediamine, 2.7 parts of 1,1'-thiocarbonylbis[1H-imidazole] and 90 parts of tetrahydrofuran was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The oily residue was stirred in acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and crystallized from ethanol. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 2.8 parts (41.5%) of 1-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1,3-dihydro-2H-benzimidazole-2-thione; mp. 157.1°C (493).

# 20 Example 85

A mixture of 7.5 parts of 6-chloro-N<sup>4</sup>-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluoro-phenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-4,5-pyrimidinediamine and 3.6 parts of urea was stirred and heated for 20 minutes at 220°C. Water was added to the reaction mixture. The precipitated product was filtered off and crystallized from methanol. The product was filtered off and recrystallized from a mixture of N,N-dimethylformamide and methanol, yielding 2.5 parts (32%) of 6-chloro-9-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benz-imidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-9H-purin-8-ol;

30 mp. 243.0°C (494).

# Example 86

A mixture of 11.3 parts of N<sup>4</sup>-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-4,5-pyrimidinediamine, 3.75 parts of carbon disulfide and 117 parts of N,N-dimethylformamide was stirred overnight at room temperature. The

reaction mixture was poured into water. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 5 parts (40%) of 9-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)-methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-9H-purine10 8-thiol; mp. 163.7°C (495).

# Example 87

To a stirred mixture of 3 parts of 3-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanyl-methyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2,3-dihydro-6-methyl-2-thioxothieno[2,3-d]pyrimidin-4(1H)-one, 4.3

15 parts of potassium hydroxide, 56 parts of ethanol and 5.5 parts of water were added dropwise 45 parts of a hydrogen peroxide solution 3%. The whole was stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol (90:10 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanone. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 1.7 parts (58%) of 3-[2-[4-[[3-(2-furanylmethyl)-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-6-methylthieno[2,3-d]
25 pyrimidine-2,4(1H,3H)-dione monohydrate; mp. 135.4°C (496).

In a similar manner there was also prepared:

3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-6-methyl-thieno[2,3-d]pyrimidine-2,4(1H,3H)dione dihydrochloride. dihydrate; mp. 232.8°C (497).

#### 30 Example 88

A mixture of 2.5 parts of 3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-methyl-4H-pyrido[1,2-a]pyrimidin-4-one and 120 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at room temperature with 1 part of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount

of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 3 parts (87%) of 3-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-2-methyl-4H-pyrido[1,2-a]pyrimidin-4-one ethanedicate (1:2); mp. 192.7°C (498).

# Example 89

A mixture of 2.4 parts of 5-chloro-N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluoro-phenyl)methyl]-1E-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]2-pyridinamine, 1 part of calcium oxide and 120 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at room temperature with 2 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. Water was added to the residue. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in a mixture of acetonitrile and ethanol. The salt was filtered off and dried in a dry pistol at 110-120°C,

20 yielding 1.8 parts (50%) of N-[2-[4-(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1E-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyridinamine ethanedicate; mp. 156.2°C (499).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]ethyl]-3-pyridazinamine trihydrochloride.monohydrate;

mp. 197.9°C (500);

N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]ethyl]-4-pyrimidinamine; mp. 60.3°C (501);

9-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-lpiperidinyl]ethyl]-9H-purin-8-ol; mp. 213.6°C (502);

N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-4,5-pyrimidinediamine (503).

Example 90

A mixture of 7.7 parts of l-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-35 (4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole and

150 parts of a hydrobromic acid solution 48% in water was stirred overnight at 80°C. The reaction mixture was evaporated and water was added to the residue. The whole was treated with ammonium hydroxide and the product was extracted with trichloromethane. The

5 extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (HPLC) over silica gel using a mixture of hexane, trichloromethane and methanol (45:45:10 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The

10 product was filtered off and dried, yielding 2.5 parts (35%) of 4-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]phenol; mp. 130.3°C (504).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethyl]-4
15 piperidinyl]-methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-6-ol monohydrate; mp. 169.4°C

(505).

#### Example 91

A mixture of 7 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(2-nitrophenyl)-l-piperidineethanamine,

20 l part of a solution of thiophene in methanol 4% and 200 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at 50°C with 2 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding 6 parts (90%) of N¹-[2-[4-[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1,2-benzenediamine (506).

### Example 92

To a stirred mixture of 34.5 parts of 9-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]30 ethyl]-9H-purine-8-thiol and 180 parts of N.N-dimethylformamide were added portionwise 3.2 parts of a sodium hydride dispersion 50%. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 0.5 hours at room temperature. 11.5 Parts of iodomethane were added dropwise. After complete addition, the whole was stirred for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into water. The product was extracted with

4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from acetonitrile. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 28.3 parts (80%) of 9-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-y1]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-8-(methylthio)-9H-purine; mp. 133.1°C (507). Example 93

To a stirred and cooled mixture of 6.2 parts of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]-ethyl]-2-pyridinamine, 2 parts of N,N-diethylethanamine and 90 parts of tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise slowly a solution of 1.9 parts of benzoyl chloride in 45 parts of tetrahydrofuran. Upon completion, stirring was continued for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated. Water was added to the residue. The solution was treated with ammonium hydroxide. The product was extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2,2'-oxybispropane. The product was filtered off and dried, yielding 5.3 parts (69%) of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]-ethyl]-N-(2-pyrimidinyl)benzamide; mp. 108.1°C (508).

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

N-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]-ethyl]-N-(2-pyrimidinyl)-2-furancarboxamide ethanedioate (1:2); mp. 147.7°C (509).

# Example 94

A mixture of 6.6 parts of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-2-pyrimidinamine, 20 parts of acetic acid anhydride and 60 parts of water was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was evaporated. Water was added and the whole was treated with ammonium hydroxide. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel using a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia, (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in 2-propanone. The

salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 2.7 parts (27%) of N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-N-(2-pyrimidinyl)acetamide ethanedioate (1:2); mp. 173.7°C (510).

### 5 Example 95

A mixture of 2.9 parts of N-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidinyl]-ethyl]-2-(methyl-amino)benzamide, 10 parts of acetic acid anhydride and 20 parts of water was stirred and heated for 3 hours at 100°C. The reaction

10 mixture was cooled, water was added and the whole was made alkaline with ammonium hydroxide. The product was extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was purified twice by column chromatography over silica gel using each time a mixture of trichloromethane and methanol, saturated with ammonia (95:5 by volume) as eluent. The pure fractions were collected and the eluent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in ethanol, yielding 0.2 parts (4.3%) of 2-(acetylmethylamino)-N-[2-[4-[[1-(2-furanylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]-methyl]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]benzamide ethanedioate (2:5);

20 mp. 146.8°C (511).

### Example 96

A mixture of 13.4 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benz-imidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-(phenylmethyl)-l-piperidineethanamine, 4 parts of poly(oxymethylene), 1 part of a solution of thiophene in methanol 4% and 120 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at room temperature with 2 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 5%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The solution was washed with water, dried, filtered and evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedicate salt in methanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 13.02 parts (68.3%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-methyl-N-(phenylmethyl)-l-piperidine-ethanamine ethanedicate (1:2); mp. 172.6°C (512).

A mixture of 10 parts of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-methyl-N-(phenylmethyl)-l-piperidine-ethanamine and 120 parts of methanol was hydrogenated at normal pressure and at room temperature with 2 parts of palladium-on-charcoal catalyst 10%. After the calculated amount of hydrogen was taken up, the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was converted into the ethanedioate salt in methanol. The salt was filtered off and dried, yielding 7 parts (87.8%) of 4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]-methyl]-N-methyl-1-piperidineethanamine ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 205.8°C (dec.) (513).

A mixture of 1.8 parts of 2-chloropyrimidine, 6 parts of

4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-N-methyll-piperidineethanamine, 1.7 parts of sodium hydrogen carbonate and

15 120 parts of ethanol was stirred and refluxed overnight. The
reaction mixture was evaporated. Water was added. The product was
extracted with 4-methyl-2-pentanone. The extract was dried, filtered
and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of
2,2'-oxybispropane and 1,1'-oxybisethane (50:50 by volume). The

20 product was filtered off and dried, yielding 5.5 parts (76.5%) of
N-[2-[4-[[1-[(4-fluorophenyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]l-piperidinyl]ethyl]-N-methyl-2-pyrimidinamine; mp. 135.4°C (514).

Example 97

25 ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazole and 18 parts of
N,N-dimethylacetamide were added portionwise 0.5 parts of a sodium
hydride dispersion 59.4% at room temperature. After stirring for 35
minutes at room temperature and for 10 minutes at 60°C, a solution
of 1.7 parts of 1-(chloromethyl)-2-fluorobenzene in 9 parts of

N,N-dimethylacetamide was added dropwise at 60°C. After stirring for
10 minutes, the reaction mixture was cooled and poured into 150
parts of water. The product was extracted twice with 4-methyl-2pentanone. The combined extracts were washed with water, dried,
filtered and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture

of 2,2'-oxybispropane and 2-propanone. The product was filtered off

```
and dried, yielding 3.0 parts (65.5%) of 1-[(2-fluorophenyl)methyl]-
    2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]-methyl]-lH-benz-
    imidazole; mp. 109.3°C (515).
       In a similar manner there were also prepared:
    2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(2-phenyl-
5
    ethyl)-lH-benzimidazole dihydrochloride. monohydrate; mp. 176.0°C
    (516);
    1-(diphenylmethyl)-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]-
    methyl]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(2:5); mp. 174.0°C (517);
    1-[(2,5-dimethylphenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-
10
    piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 118.3°C (518);
    1-[(2,6-dichlorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-
    piperidinyl]methyl]-lH-benzimidazole; mp. 152.4°C (519);
    1-[(3-chlorophenyl)methyl]-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperi-
    dinyl]-methyl]-lH-benzimidazole dihydrochloride; mp. 173.3°C (520);
    2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(1-naphtha-
    lenyl-methyl)-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(2:5); mp. 186.8°C (521);
    1-cyclohexy1-2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxypheny1)ethy1]-4-piperidiny1]methy1]-
    1H-benzimidazole dihydrochloride.monohydrate; mp. 189.6°C (522);
20 2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(3-thienyl-
    methyl)-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(1:2); mp..185.5°C (523);
    2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-(2-pyrazinyl-
     methyl)-1H-benzimidazole (E)-2-butenedioate(1:1); mp. 180.9°C (524);
    2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-[(5-methyl-2-
25 thienyl)-methyl]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(1:2); mp. 194.9°C
    (525); and
  2-[[1-[2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-1-[(3-methyl-2-
```

thienyl)methyl]-lH-benzimidazole ethanedioate(1:2).monohydrate; mp.

30

166.2°C (526).

Following the procedures described in example 18 there were also prepared:

5 
$$CH_2-N \longrightarrow CH_2 \xrightarrow{N} A^1 \xrightarrow{A}_A^2$$

10			
	N°	R <sup>1-a</sup>	A <sup>1</sup> =A <sup>2</sup> -A <sup>3</sup> =A <sup>4</sup>
	527	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-CH=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )
	528	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )=CH-CH=CH
15	529	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-C(OCH3)=CH
	530	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-CC1=CH
	531	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	СH=СС1-С(ОСН <sub>3</sub> )=СН
	532	2-furanyl	CH=CH-C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )=CH
	533	2-furanyl	CH=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
20	534	2-pyridinyl	CH=CH-C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )=CH
	535	2-pyridinyl	CH=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
	536	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
	537	2-furanyl	N=C(OCH3)-CH=CH
	538	2-pyridinyl	N=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
25			

### Example 99

Following the procedures described in example 26 there were also prepared:

35

	И°	Rl-a	$A^{1}=A^{2}-A^{3}=A^{4}$
10	539	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-CH=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )
_	540	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )=CH-CH=CH
	541	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-C(OCH3)=CH
	542	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-CC1=CH
	543	4-F-C6H4-	CH=CC1-C(OCH3)=CH
15	544	2-furanyl	CH=CH-C(OCH3)=CH
	545	2-furanyl	CH=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
;	546	2-pyridinyl	CH=CH-C(OCH3)=CH
	547	2-pyridinyl	CH=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
	548	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
20	549	2-furanyl	N=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
	550	2-pyridinyl	N=C(OCH3)-CH=CH

25

30

Following the procedures described in example 34 there were also prepared:

:	N°	R <sup>l-a</sup>	A <sup>1</sup> =A <sup>2</sup> -A <sup>3</sup> =A <sup>4</sup>
35	551	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-CH=C(OH)
	552	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	C(OH)=CH-CH=CH
	553	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=CH

		r	
	554	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-CC1=CH
	555	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CC1-C(OH)=CH
	556	2-furanyl	CH=CH+C(OH)=CH
5	557	2-furanyl	CH=C ( OH ) -CH=CH
	558	2-pyridinyl	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
	559	2-pyridinyl	CH=C ( OH )CH≔CH
	560	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N=C ( OH ) -CH=CH
	561	2-furanyl	N=C ( OH ) -CH=CH
10	562	2-pyridinyl	N=C ( OH ) -CH=CH

15

20

Following the procedures described in example 46 there were also prepared:

 $A^{1}=A^{2}-A^{3}=A^{4}$ N° Rl-a Ar 4-CH<sub>3</sub>O-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> 563 4-F-C6H4-CH=CH-CH=C(OH) 25 564 4-CH3O-C6H4 CH=CH-C(OH)=CH 4-F-C6H4-4-CH3O-C6H4 565 C(OH)=CH-CH=CH 4-CH<sub>3</sub>O-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub> 566 4-F-C6H4-CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=CH4-CH3O-C6H4 567 CH=CCl-C(OH)=CH 568 4-CH3O-C6H4 CH=C(OH)-CCl=CH 4-F-C6H4-30 3,4-(CH<sub>3</sub>O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>-569 CH=CH-C(OH)=CH 570 3,4-(CH<sub>3</sub>O)<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>-CH=C(OH)-CH=CH 3-CH3O-C6H4-571 CH=CH-C(OH)=CH 4-F-C6H4-572 3-CH30-C6H4-CH=C(OH)-CH=CH 4-F-C6H4-4-CH<sub>3</sub>O-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>-573 CH=CH-C(OH)=CH2-furanyl 35 574 4-CH3O-C6H4-2-furanyl CH=C(OH)-CH=CH

	575	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
	576	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
5	577	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-P-C6H4-	N=CH-CH=CH
	578	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	N=CH-CH=CH
		4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	N=CH-CH=CH
	580	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>A</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N=C(OH)-CH=CH
	581	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	N=C(OH)-CH=CH
10	582	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	N=C(OH)-CH=CH
	583	2-CH3O-C6H4-	4-F-C6H4-	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
	584	2-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
	585	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-CH=C(OCH3)
	586	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-C(OCH3)=CH
15	587	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )=CH-CH=CH
a :	-588	;	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-C(OCH3)=CH
	589	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CC1-C(OCH3)=CH
	590	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-CC1=CH
	591	3,4-(CH <sub>3</sub> O) <sub>2</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )=CH
20	592	3,4-(CH <sub>3</sub> O) <sub>2</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> -	4-F-C6H4-	CH=C(OCH3)-CH=CH
	593	3-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-C(OCH3)=CH
	594	3-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-CH=CH
	595	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	CH=CH-C(OCH3)=CH
	596	4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	CH=C(OCH3)-CH=CH
25	597	4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	CH=CH-C(OCH3)=CH
	598	4-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	CH=C(OCH3)-CH=CH
	599	4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	N=C(OCH3)-CH=CH
	600	4-CH30-C6H3-11111	2-pyridinyl	N=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
•	601	4-CH <sub>3</sub> 0-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	N=C(OCH <sub>3</sub> )-CH=CH
30	602	2-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C6H4-	CH=CH-C(OCH3)=CH
	603	2-CH <sub>3</sub> O-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OCH3)-CH=CH
	1			

In a similar manner there were also prepared:

$$L'-(CH_2)_n-N$$

$$CH_2 \longrightarrow A$$

$$A$$

$$A$$

$$A$$

$$A$$

$$A$$

	<u></u>			
	N°	L'	n	Al=A2-A3=A4
10	604	HN N-	2	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
15	605	S HN N-	2	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
20	606	HN N-	2	CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=CH
20	607	HN N-	3	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
25	608	S HN N-	<b>3</b>	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
30	609	HIN N-	3	CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=CH
35	610	HN N-	3	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
				1

5	611	HN N-	3	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
	612	HN N-	3	CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=CH
	613	2-thienyl	2	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
	614	2-thienyl	2	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
	615	2-thienyl	2	CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=CH
15	616	H N N O	2	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
20	617	H N O	2	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
25	618	H N- O	2	CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=CH
	1	1	i	

Pollowing the procedures described in example 90 there were also prepared:

5 
$$Ar-CH_2-CH_2-N$$

$$CH_2-R^{1-a}$$

$$N$$

$$A^{1}$$

$$A^{2}$$

$$A^{3}$$

N°	Ar	R1-a	$A^{1}=A^{2}-A^{3}=A^{4}$
619	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-CH=C(OH)
620	4-HO-C6H4	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
621	4-HO-C6H4	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	C ( OH ) = CH - CH = CH
622	4-HO-C6H4	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-C(OH)=C
623	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CCl-C(OH)=CH
624	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub>	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-CCl=CH
625	3,4-(HO) <sub>2</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
626	3,4-(HO) <sub>2</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>3</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
627	3-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
628	3-HO-C6H4-	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
629	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
630	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH
631	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
632	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	CH=C (OH)-CH=CH
633	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	4-F-C6H4-	N=CH-CH=CH
634	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	N=CH-CH=CH
635	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	N=CH-CH=CH
636	4-HO-C6H4-	4-F-C6H4-	N=C(OH)-CH=CH
637	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-pyridinyl	N=C (OH)-CH=CH
638	4-HO-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	2-furanyl	N=C (OH)-CH=CH
639	2-HO-C6H4-	4-F-C6H4-	CH=CH-C(OH)=CH
640	2-HO-C6H4-	4-F-C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -	CH=C(OH)-CH=CH

The useful antihistaminic properties of the compounds of formula

(I) are demonstrated in the following test procedure.

Protection of rats from compound 48/80-induced lethality.

5

10

15

20

25

30

Compound 48/80, a mixture of oligomers obtained by condensation of 4-methoxy-N-methylbenzeneethanamine and formaldehyde has been described as a potent histamine releasing agent (Int. Arch. Allergy, 13, 336 (1958)). The protection from compound 48/80-induced lethal circulatory collapse appears to be a simple way of evaluating quantitatively the antihistaminic activity of test compounds. Male rats of an inbred Wistar strain, weighing 240-260 g were used in the experiment. After overnight starvation the rats were transferred to conditioned laboratories (temp. =  $21 \pm 1^{\circ}$ C, relative humidity =  $65 \pm 5$ %).

The rats were treated subcutaneously or orally with a test compound or with the solvent (NaCl solution, 0.9%). One hour after treatment there was injected intravenously compound 48/80, freshly dissolved in water, at a dose of 0.5 mg/kg (0.2 ml/100 g of body weight). In control experiments, wherein 250 solvent-treated animals were injected with the standard dose of compound 48/80, not more than 2.8% of the animals survived after 4 hours. Survival after 4 hours is therefore considered to be a safe criterion of a protective effect of drug administration.

The ED<sub>50</sub>-values of the compounds of formula (I) are listed in the first column of tables 1 to 4. Said ED<sub>50</sub>-values are the values in mg/kg body weight at which the tested compounds protect 50% of the tested animals against compound 48/80-induced lethality.

The compounds of formula (I) and the pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts thereof are also potent serotonin-antagonists. The potency of the subject compounds as serotonin-antagonists is clearly evidenced by the results obtained in the following tests

wherein the antagonistic activity of the subject compounds on the

effect of serotonin is examined.

Antagonistic activity on the effects of serotonin in the gastric lesion test.

#### 5 A. Lesions induced by compound 48/80:

Compound 48/80 (a mixture of oligomers obtained by condensation of 4-methoxy-N-methylbenzeneethanamine and formaldehyde) is a potent releaser of vasoactive amines from endogenous stores such as, for example, histamine and serotonin. Rats injected with compound 48/80 exhibit consistent changes of blood flow in different vascular beds: cyanosis of the ears and the extremities are prominent within five minutes after injection of the compound; the rats die from shock within 30 minutes. The shock, followed by dead, can be avoided if the rats are pretreated with a classical H 1 antagonist.

However the stimulatory effects on gastric secretion are not suppressed so that rats treated with compound 48/80 and protected from shock by an H l antagonist may exhibit all signs of intensive gastric gland activity: gross autopsy shows distended stomachs with abnormal contents and rough bright red patches all over the mucosa, corresponding to areas of disintegrated glands. A number of known serotonin-antagonists such as, for example, methysergide, cyproheptadine; cinanserin, mianserin, pipamperone, spiperone, pizotifen and metergoline, prevent completely the cyanosis of ears and extremities as well as the lesions in the glandular area of the stomach and the abnormal gastric distension.

#### B. Method:

Male rats of a Wistar inbred strain, weighing 220-250 g, were starved overnight, water being available ad libitum. The test compounds were administered orally as a solution or as a suspension in aqueous medium. A control rat and a "blank" rat received the test compound. One hour later 5-[4-(diphenylmethyl)-1-piperazinylmethyl]-1-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-2-methanol was administered subcutaneously to all rats at the dose of 2.5 mg/kg. Two hours after the oral or subcutaneous administration of the test compound,

the compound 48/80 (freshly solved in water at a concentration of 0.25 mg/ml) was injected intravenously into all rats (dose: 1 mg/kg) except the "blank" rats.

Pour hours after the intravenous injection of compound 48/80, the rats were decapitated and the stomachs were removed. Subsequently the stomachs were inspected for distension and contents (blood, fluid, food) and thoroughly rinsed. The macroscopic lesions were scored from 0 to +++, 0 corresponding to complete absence of visible lesions and the highest score corresponding to reddish

10 rough patches covering more than half the glandular area.

The second column of tables 1 - 4 show for a number of compounds of formula (I) the doses (in mg/kg body weight) at which the distension of the stomach as well as the lesions in the glandular area of the stomach are completely absent in 50% of the test rats

15 (ED<sub>50</sub>-value).

The compounds listed in table 1 are not given for the purpose of limiting the invention thereto but only to exemplify the useful pharmacological activities of all the compounds within the scope of formula (I).

20

25

30

	Compound 48/80	gastric lesion .
Comp.	lethality test in	test
No.	rats ED <sub>50</sub> in	ED <sub>50</sub> in mg/kg
	mg/kg body weight	
8	0.04	-
23	0.08	-
25	0.16	-
34	0.04	0.63
40	0.08	-
42	0.02	-
45	0.04	-
47	0.08	0.63
48	0.16	-
50	0.04	<del>-</del> .
59	0.02	-
64	0.04	<b>-</b> '
66	0.02	-
81	0.08	<b></b>
82	0.005	0.63
83	0.01	-
85	0.01	-
86	0.01	-
89	0.04	-
90	0.01	0.31
93	0.04	-
94 -	ı· ı .0 <b>.</b> -08	· 0.63 =
96	0.04	-
98	0.04	. •
99	0.04	0.31
100	0.16	
101	0.02	0.31
102	0.02	0.31
1		

	Compound 48/80	gastric lesion
Comp.	lethality test in	test
No.	rats ED <sub>50</sub> in	ED <sub>50</sub> in mg/kg
	mg/kg body weight	body weight
103	0.005	0.16
104	0.08	-
105	0.01	-
107	0.04	0.08
110	0.02	-
112	0.08	-
113	0.08	-
115	0.16	-
116	0.16	. <del>-</del>
117	0.01	<del>-</del>
118	0.04	0.63
123	0.01	-
124	0.04	0.31
126	0.04	0.63 <sub>.</sub>
127	0.08	0.63
128	0.16	0.63
129	0.16	-
130	0.16	-
131	0.02	0.16
133	0.02	0.16
134	0.04	-
139	0.08	🚍 து ஐத
140	0.04	-
142	0.02	-
143	0.04	0.63
144	0.04	-

١.			
1 7	45	0.02	0.16
1	.47	0.08	-
] 1	.49	0.04	-
1	.51	0.02	0.16
2	.52	0.04	-
] 3	L54	0.08	-
] ]	L58	0.04	-
] 3	L61	0.04	-
] :	162	0.08	0.31
1	163	0.02	-
	164	0.02	0.02
	165	0.02	-
	166	0.04	-
	167	0.01	-
	168	0.94	0.63
	169	0.02	-
١	170	0.08	-
١	171	0.08	-
-	173	20201	n no -
	174	0.01	-
	175	0.02	-
	176	0.04	-
	177	0.04	0.31
	178	0.02	-
	180	0.01	0.31
	181	0.04	-
	182	0:04	n n/ 0.63
	183	0.01	-
	184	0.02	0.63
	186	0.04	0.31
	187	0.04	0.31
	189	0.02	0.63
	198	0.04	0.08

2	02	0.08	- !
2	203	0.04	- !
2	204	0.08	<b>-</b> ·
2	205	0.08	-
7	207	0.08	80.0
2	208	0.04	0.08
2	209	0.08	0.63
:	214	0.08	0.04
:	215	0.08	-
:	216	0.04	-
	218	0.04	0.04
	219	80.0	0.63
	221	0.04	-
	224	0.04	0.08
	226	0.08	0.04
١	228	0.04	0.01
١	229	9.04	0.63
١	232	0.08	-
	234	0.02	-
	236	0.08	0.63
	238	0.08	0.63
	243	0.04	- <u>i</u>
	244	0.16	0.31
	245	0.02	-
	248	0.04	-
	255	0.16	-
	256	0.08	· -
	257	0.02	-
	258	0.08	-
	259	0.08	• -
	260	. 0.01	0.63
	261	0.08	~
	262	0.04	0.16
	,		

1	~~~~~		
1	263	0.04	0.04
	264	0.04	0.63
	265	0.02	_
:	266	0.04	· <b>-</b>
	268	0.16	-
:	270	0.08	-
:	272	0.08	0.63
2	273	0.01	0.31
2	274	0.16	-
2	276	0.04	0.31
2	283	0.04	0.63
2	90	0.08	-
2	93	0.08	-
2	97	0.08	-
3	28	. 0.16	
3	29	0.31	-
3	30	0.08	0.16
3	31	0.04	0.02
3	32	0.08	0.08
3	33	0.04	-
3	34	0.005	0.31
3	35	0.02	0.16
3	36	0.01	0.08
3:	38	0.02	-
3:	39	0.01	-
34	10	0.08	-
34	12	0.02	0.16
34	14	0.02	-
34	15	0.08	-
34	17	0.08	0.63
34	18	0.04	0.04
34	19	0.08	-
35	il	0.02	0.08

	ľ			•
	352	0.01	-	
	355	0.08	-	
	356	0.02	0.08	
	357	0.02	0.63	
	361	0.02	-	
	362	0.08	0.63	
	363	0.04	-	
	364	0.04	-	
	365	0.08	_	
l	366	0.31	-	
I	367	0.16	0.16	
l	368	0.01	-	
l	369	0.04	_	
l	370	0.02	-	
l	371	0.16	0.63	
	372	0.04	0.16	
	373	0.08	-	
١.	374	0.02	0.02	
	376	0.02	0.63	
:	377	0.16	-	
:	378	0.04	-	
• •	379	0.08	0.31	
:	380 /	0.31	0.63	
3	881	0.08	0.16	
3	882	0.08	0.63	
3	83	0.04	0.16	
3	84	0.08	0.63	
3	85	0.01	0.08	
3	88	0.16	-	
3	90	0.04	-	
3	91	0.02	0.02	
3	92	0.02	0.63	
3	93	0.08	-	
_				

394	0.02	-
397	0.04	0.04
399	0.02	0.04
402	0.04	-
416	0.04	0.04
417	0.04	-
418	0.02	0.04
422	0.04	0.04
427	0.16	-
428	0.04	0.01
429	0.02	-
430	0.01	0.005
431	0.04	0.005
432	0.04	0.31
433	0.01	0.16
434	0.0025	-
436	0.01	0.63
438	0.08	0.16
439	0.16	0.31
440	0.02	- '
441	0.08	0.16
443	0.02	0.16
444	0.16	-
445	0.16	-
448	0.08	0.16
452	0.16	-
453	0.04	0.02
455	0.04	0.63
456	0.01	0.63
459	0.02	-
460	80.0	0.63
461	0.08	0.08
463	0.08	-
L		400°.

~~~~~		,
466	0.02	-
467	0.04	0.08
468	0.02	0.63
470	0.04	-
472	0.04	-
473	0.02	-
477	0.02	0.63
478	0.02	0.04
479	0.04	-
480	0.02	-
489	0.08	0.63
490	0.31	-
491	0.16	-
493	0.08	0.04
495	0.04	0.16
498	0.08	0.16
499	0.04	0.01
500	0.01	-
501	0.04	-
502	0.08	0.16
504	0.08	0.63
505	8.04	0.04
507	0.16	-
508	0.08	0.16
509	0.02	-
510	0.02	0.16
511	0.16	
512	0.08	-
513	0.08	-
514	0.02	0.63
515	0.16	-
516	0.16	<b>-</b> .
523	0.04	0.31
524	0.16	-
L	<del> </del>	

In view of their antihistaminic and serotonin-antagonistic properties, the compounds of formula (I) and their acid-addition salts are very useful in the treatment of allergic diseases such as, for example, allergic rhinitis, allergic conjunctivities, chronic urticaria, allergic astma and the like.

In view of their useful antihistaminic and serotonin-antagonistic acitivity, the subject compounds may be formulated into various pharmaceutical forms for administration purposes.

To prepare the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention, an effective amount of the particular compound, in base or acidaddition salt form, as the active ingredient is combined in intimate admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, which carrier may take a wide variety of forms depending on the form of preparation desired for administration.

These pharmaceutical compositions are desirably in unitary dosage form suitable, preferably, for administration orally, rectally, percutaneously, or by parenteral injection. For example, in preparing the compositions in oral dosage form, any of the usual pharmaceutical media may be employed, such as, for example, water, glycols, oils,

alcohols and the like in the case of oral liquid preparations such as suspensions, syrups, elixirs and solutions: or solid carriers such as starches, sugars, kaolin, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents and the like in the case of powders, pills, capsules and tablets.

Because of their ease in administration, tablets and capsules

represent the most advantageous oral dosage unit form, in which case solid pharmaceutical carriers are obviously employed. For parenteral compositions, the carrier will usually comprise sterile water, at least in large part, though other ingredients, for example, to aid solubility, may be included. Injectable solutions, for example, may be prepared in which the carrier comprises saline solution, glucose solution or a mixture of saline and glucose solution. Injectable

suspensions may also be prepared in which case appropriate liquid carriers, suspending agents and the like may be employed.

In the compositions suitable for percutaneous administration, the carrier optionally comprises a penetration enhancing agent and/or a suitable wettable agent, optionally combined with suitable additives of any nature in minor proportions, which additives do not introduce a significant deletorious effect on the skin. Said additives may facilitate the administration to the skin and/or may be helpful for preparing the desired compositions. These compositions may be administered in various ways, e.g., as a transdermal patch, as a spot-on, as an ointment.

Acid addition salts of (I) due to their increased water solubility over the corresponding base form, are obviously more suitable in the preparation of aqueous compositions.

It is especially advantageous to formulate the aforementioned pharmaceutical compositions in dosage unit form for ease of
administration and uniformity of dosage. Dosage unit form as used in the specification and claims herein refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active ingredient calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. Examples of such dosage unit forms are tablets (including scored or coated tablets), capsules, pills, powder packets, wafers, injectable solutions or suspensions, teaspoonfuls, tablespoonfuls and the like, and segregated multiples thereof.

"Active ingredient" (A.I.) as used throughout these examples
relates to a compound of formula (I), a possible stereochemically
isomeric form or pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt
thereof.

#### Example 98 : ORAL DROPS

propanoic acid and 1.5 liters of the polyethylene glycol at 60-80°C.

After cooling to 30-40°C there were added 35 liters of polyethylene glycol and the mixture was stirred well. Then there was added a solution of 1750 grams of sodium saccharin in 2.5 liters of purified water and while stirring there were added 2.5 liters of cocoa flavor and polyethylene glycol q.s. to a volume of 50 liters, providing an

oral drop solution comprising 10 milligrams of the A.I. per milliliter. The resulting solution was filled into suitable containers. Example 99 : ORAL SOLUTION

9 Grams of methyl 4-hydroxybenzoate and 1 gram of propyl
5 4-hydroxybenzoate were dissolved in 4 liters of boiling purified
water. In 3 liters of this solution were dissolved first 10 grams of
2,3-dihydroxybutanedioic acid and thereafter 20 grams of the A.I. The
latter solution was combined with the remaining part of the former
solution and 12 liters 1,2,3-propanetriol and 3 liters of sorbitol 70%
10 solution were added thereto. 40 Grams of sodium saccharin were
dissolved in 0.5 liters of water and 2 milliliters of raspberry and 2
milliliters of gooseberry essence were added. The latter solution was
combined with the former, water was added q.s. to a volume of 20
liters providing an oral solution comprising 20 milligrams of the
15 active ingredient per teaspoonful (5 milliliters). The resulting
solution was filled in suitable containers.

# Example 100 : CAPSULES

20 Grams of the A.I., 6 grams sodium lauryl sulfate, 56 grams starch, 56 grams lactose, 0.8 grams colloidal silicon dioxide, and 1.2 grams magnesium stearate were vigorously stirred together. The resulting mixture was subsequently filled into 1000 suitable hardened gelating capsules, comprising each 20 milligrams of the active ingredient.

## Example 101 : FILM-COATED TABLETS

## 25 Preparation of tablet core

A mixture of 100 grams of the A.I., 570 grams lactose and 200 grams starch was mixed well and thereafter humidified with a solution of 5 grams sodium dodecyl sulfate and 10 grams polyvinylpyrrolidone in about 200 milliliters of water. The wet powder mixture was sieved, dried and sieved again. Then there was added 100 grams microcrystalline cellulose and 15 grams hydrogenated vegetable oil. The whole was mixed well and compressed into tablets, giving 10.000 tablets, each containing 10 milligrams of the active ingredient.

#### Coating

35 To a solution of 10 grams methyl cellulose in 75 milliliters of

denaturated ethanol there was added a solution of 5 grams of ethyl cellulose in 150 milliliters of dichloromethane. Then there were added 75 milliliters of dichloromethane and 2.5 milliliters 1,2,3-propanetriol. 10 Grams of polyethylene glycol was molten and dissolved in 75 milliliters of dichloromethane. The latter solution was added to the former and then there were added 2.5 grams of magnesium octadecanoate, 5 grams of polyvinylpyrrolidone and 30 milliliters of concentrated colour suspension (Opaspray K-1-2109) and the whole was homogenated.

The tablet cores were coated with the thus obtained mixture in a 10 coating apparatus.

#### Example 102 : INJECTABLE SOLUTION

1.8 Grams methyl 4-hydroxybenzoate and 0.2 grams propyl 4-hydroxybenzoate were dissolved in about 0.5 liters of boiling water for injection. After cooling to about 50°C there were added while stirring 4 grams lactic acid, 0.05 propylene glycol and 4 grams of the A.I.. The solution was cooled to room temperature and supplemented with water for injection q.s. ad 1 liter volume, giving a solution of 4 milligrams A.I. per milliliters. The solution was sterilized by filtration (U.S.P. XVII p. 811) and filled in sterile containers.

### 20 Example 103 : SUPPOSITORIES

3 Grams A.I. was dissolved in a solution of 3 grams 2,3-dihydroxy-butanedioic acid in 25 milliliters polyethylene glycol 400. 12 Grams surfactant and triglycerides q.s. ad 300 grams were molten together. The latter mixture was mixed well with the former solution. The thus obtained mixture was poured onto moulds at a temperature of 37-38°C to form 100 suppositories each containing 30 milligrams of the active ingredient.

The present invention is also related with a method of treating

30 allergic diseases in warm-blooded animals suffering from said allergic
diseases by administering an effective anti-allergic amount of a
compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition
salt thereof.

Suitable doses administered daily to subjects are varying from 35 0.1 to 100 mg, more preferably from 1 to 50 mg.

#### CLAIMS

1. A chemical compound having the formula

$$L-N \longrightarrow B- \iiint_{N} A^{\frac{1}{2}} A^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$A \longrightarrow A$$

$$(1),$$

- 2 a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt or a possible
- 3 stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein:
- 4  $A^{1}=A^{2}-A^{3}=A^{4}$  is a bivalent radical having the formula
- 5 -CH=CH-CH=CH- (a-1),
- -N=CH-CH=CH- (a-2),
- 7 -CH=N-CH=CH- (a-3),
- 8 -CH=CH-N=CH- (a-4), or
- 9 -CH=CH=CH=N- (a-5),
- 10 wherein one or two hydrogen atoms in said radicals (a-1) (a-5) may,
- 11 each independently from each other, be replaced by halo, lower alkyl,
- 12 lower alkyloxy, trifluoromethyl or hydroxy;
- 13 R<sup>1</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen,
- 14 alkyl, cycloalkyl, Ar and lower alkyl substituted with one or two
- 15 Ar radicals;
- 16 R<sup>2</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and
- 17 lower alkyl;
- 18 B is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, S, SO or SO<sub>2</sub>;
- L is a member selected from the group consisting of a radical of
- 20 formula
- 21  $L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-T-C_{s}H_{2s}$  (b-1); and
- 22 a radical of formula

- 24 wherein one or two hydrogen atoms in the bivalent radical
- 25 -CgH2s- may, each independently from each other, be replaced by

- 26 halo, hydroxy, mercapto, isothiocyanato, isocyanato, lower alkyloxy,
- 27 lower alkylthio, Ar<sup>1</sup>, Ar<sup>1</sup>0-, Ar<sup>1</sup>s-, Ar<sup>1</sup>so<sub>2</sub>-, or NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>5</sup>; and
- 28 n is 0 or the integer 1 or 2;
- 29 r and s are, independently from each other, 0 or an integer of from
- 30 1 to 6 inclusive;

- 23 said Y being O, S, NR or a direct bond;
- 34 X being O, S, CH-NO, or NR4;
- 35 Z being O, S, NR<sup>5</sup> or a direct bond; and
- said R<sup>3</sup> being hydrogen, lower alkyl, (Ar<sup>2</sup>)lower alkyl, 2-lower
- 37 alkyloxy-1,2-dioxoethyl or a radical of formula  $-C(=X)-R^6$ ,  $R^6$
- 38 being hydrogen, lower alkyl, Ar<sup>2</sup>, Ar<sup>2</sup>-lower alkyl, lower alkyloxy,
- 39 Ar -lower alkyloxy, mono- or di(lower alkyl)amino, Ar -amino,
- 40 Ar 2-lower alkylamino or Ar 2-lower alkyl(lower alkyl)amino;
- 41 said R being hydrogen, lower alkyl, cyano, nitro, Ar -sulfonyl,
- 42 lower alkylsulfonyl, lower alkylcarbonyl or Ar2-carbonyl; and
- 43 said R<sup>5</sup> being hydrogen or lower alkyl;
- wherein L<sup>1</sup> is a member selected from the group consisting of hydro-
- 45 gen; halo; hydroxy; lower alkyloxy; lower alkylthio; cyano; mercapto;
- 46 isocyanato; isothiocyanato; Arl; Arl-carbonyl; Arl-sulfonyl;
- 47 lower alkylsulfonyl; cycloalkył being optionally substituted with up to
- 48 two substituents each independently selected from the group consisting
- 49 of lower alkyl, cyano and Ar2; [10,11-dihydro-5H-dibenzo[a,d]cyclo-
- 50 hepten-5-ylidene]methyl; Het; and furan substituted with substituted
- 51 lower alkyl; said substituted lower alkyl being lower alkyl substituted
- 52 with a member selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, mercapto,
- 53 lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, aminolower alkylthio, Ar2-oxy and a
- 54 radical of formula

- wherein: t is 0 or an integer of from 1 to 6 inclusive; and 55 R is hydrogen or lower alkyl; 56 provided that: when in said radical of formula (c) t is 57 58 0, then Z or Y is a direct bond; and where r is 0, L may also be lower alkenyl, Ar -lower alkenyl or lower alkyl substituted with two lower alkyloxy radicals; and
- 61 where r is 0 and T is  $NR^3$ , or T is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-Y$  or  $T^1$  is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-X$ 62 L<sup>1</sup> may also be amino, lower alkylamino or Ar<sup>1</sup>-amino; and
- 63 where r is 0, and T is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-Y$  or  $T^1$  is  $-N(R^5)-C(=X)-$ 64 L<sup>1</sup> may also be nitro;
- said Het being an optionally substituted five- or six-membered heterocyclic ring, being optionally condensed with an optionally substituted five- or six-membered carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring;
- 68 provided that:
- when L is a radical of formula (b-1) wherein L is hydrogen and 69 wherein T is -Z-C(=X)-Y- wherein Y is other then a direct bond 70 and Z and X are each independently O or S, then r is not O; or 71 when L is a radical of formula (b-2) wherein L<sup>1</sup> is hydrogen and 72 wherein  $T^1$  is -Z-C(=X) - wherein Z and X are each independently 73 74 0 or S, then r is not 0;
- 75 when L is a radical of formula (b-1) wherein L is halo. hydroxy, lower alkyloxy, mercapto, lower alkylthio, isocyanato, 76 isothiocyanato or Het connected to  $C_{r}H_{2r}$  on a nitrogen atom, 77 78 and wherein r is 0, then T is a direct bond or a radical 79 -C(=X)-Y-; or when L is a radical of formula (b-2) wherein  $L^1$ 80 is halo, hydroxy, lower alkyloxy, mercapto, lower alkylthio, isocyanato, isothiocyanato or Het connected to  $c_{r_{2r}}^{H}$  on a 81 nitrogen atom, and wherein r is 0, then  $T^1$  is a radical -C(=X)-; 82 iii) when L is a radical of formula (b-1) wherein T is Y, said Y being 83

other than a direct bond, or wherein T is -Z-C(=X)-Y-, wherein Y

```
wherein Ar is a member selected from the group consisting of
86
    phenyl, substituted phenyl, naphthalenyl, thienyl, halothienyl, lower
87
    alkylthienyl, pyridinyl, mono- and di(lower alkyloxy)pyridinyl,
88
    pyrrolyl, lower alkylpyrrolyl, furanyl, furanyl substituted with lower
89
    alkyl, pyrazinyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, lower alkylimidazolyl;
90
    said substituted phenyl, being phenyl substituted with up to 3
91
    substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of
92
    halo, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, trifluoromethyl, lower alkyl, lower
    alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, mercapto, amino, mono- and di(lower
    alkyl)amino, lower alkylsulfonyl, lower alkylsulfonyllower alkyl,
    phenyllower alkylsulfonyl, phenylsulfonyllower alkyl, a radical of
    formula R^8-C_p^H-Y-, a radical of formula R^9-Z-C(=X)-Y-, and a
97
    radical of formula R<sup>10</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>Y-; wherein p is an integer of from 1 to
    6 inclusive and R is a member selected from the group consisting of
190 amino, cyano, phenyl aminocarbonyl, mono- and di(lower alkyl)amino-
101 carbonyl, lower alkyloxycarbonyl, phenyllower alkyloxycarbonyl,
102 4-morpholinylcarbonyl, 1-piperidinylcarbonyl, 1-pyrrolidinylcarbonyl,
103 and lower alkenyl; wherein R is member selected from the group
104 consisting of hydrogen, lower alkyl and Ar2; provided that, when
105 R is hydrogen and Y is other than a direct bond, then Z is not O or
106 S; and wherein R<sup>10</sup> is lower alkyl or Ar<sup>2</sup>;
       wherein Ar 2 is a member selected from the group consisting of
108 phenyl, substituted phenyl, thienyl and furanyl, said substituted
109 phenyl being phenyl optionally substituted with up to three
 110 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of
 lll halo, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, trifluoromethyl, lower alkyl, lower
 112 alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, mercapto, amino, mono- and di(lower
 113 alkyl)amino, carboxyl, lower alkyloxycarbonyl and (lower alkyl)-CO.
        2. A compound according to claim 1, wherein r is 0 and L^1 is
     hydrogen, hydroxy, lower alkyloxy, lower alkylthio, mercapto, Het,
     Ar , cyanato, isothiocyanato, or isocyanato.
        3. A compound according to claim 2, wherein R is lower alkyl
 1
     substituted with one Ar 1 radical.
```

- 1 4. A compound according to claim 3, wherein L is a radical of 2 formula (b-1).
- 5. A chemical compound according to any of claims 1 to 4 for use 1 2 as a medicine.
- 6. A chemical compound according to any of claims 1 to 4 for use 1 2 as an anti-allergic medicine.
- 7. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an inert carrier and a 1 pharmaceutically acceptable amount of a compound according to any of 2 3 claims 1 to 4.
- 8. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 7 for use as an 1 2
- anti-allergic medicine. 9. A process for preparing a pharmaceutical composition, 1
- characterized in that a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in any of claims 1 to 4 is intimatately mixed 3
- with a suitable pharmaceutical carrier.
- 10. A process for preparing a compound according to any of claims
- 2 1 to 4 characterized by

2

I reacting a piperidine of formula

$$L-N \xrightarrow{\mathbb{R}^2} \mathbb{R}^2$$

$$\downarrow \\ \mathbb{H}$$

$$H$$

$$(II),$$

wherein X is O, S or NH and W is a reactive leaving group, with 4 5 a diamine of formula

- 6 in a reaction-inert solvent;
- II reacting a piperidine of formula

8 L-N 
$$=$$
 E<sup>1</sup> (IV) with an intermediate of

9 
$$E^{2} \bigvee_{N=1}^{R^{1}} \bigwedge_{A}^{A^{2}} \bigvee_{A}^{A^{2}} (V), \text{ in a reaction-inert}$$

10 solvent, wherein :

- a) E<sup>1</sup> is a radical of formula -B-M wherein M is hydrogen or an alkalimetal or earth alkalinemetal and E<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula -W; or
- b) E is a radical of formula -W and E is a radical of formula M-B; or
- c) E<sup>1</sup> is a radical of formula -CH<sub>2</sub>-W and E<sup>2</sup> is a radical of formula -M, thus preparing a compound of formula

d) E<sup>1</sup> is a radical of formula -M and E<sup>2</sup> is a radical of
formula -CH<sub>2</sub>W, thus preparing a compound of formula (I-a);
III. reducing an intermediate of formula

compounds of formula (I) into each other by

a) alkylating a compound of formula Q<sup>2</sup>-D (I-c) with a reagent of

formula L<sup>1</sup>-Q<sup>1</sup> (VII) in a suitable solvent, thus preparing a

compound of formula L<sup>2</sup>-D (I-b), wherein L<sup>2</sup> has the

previously defined meaning of L, provided that it is other than

hydrogen, and wherein

in a reaction-inert solvent; and, if desired, converting the

29 i)  $Q^1$  is -W and  $Q^2$  is hydrogen; or

```
0151826
```

```
ii) Q^1 is -C_1H_{2r}-W^1 and Q^2 is a radical of formula HT^2-C_1H_{2r}, wherein W^1 is a reactive leaving group and T^2 is O, S, NR^3 or -Z^1-C(=X)-Y-, said Z^1 being
 30
 31
 32
                       O, S or NR<sup>5</sup>, thus preparing a compound of formula
 33
                L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-T^{2}-C_{s}H_{2s}-D (I-b-1-a); or iii) Q^{1} is -C_{r}H_{2r}-W^{1} and Q^{2} is a radical of formula
 34
 35
                               _{\rm HT}^{3}-N , wherein _{\rm T}^{3} is a direct bond
 36
                     or Z^{1}-(C=X)-, thus preparing a compound of formula
 37
                    L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-T^{3}-N (I-b-1-b); or
38
              iv) Q^1 is a radical of formula -C_1H_2 - T^4H and Q^2 is W-C<sub>s</sub>H<sub>2s</sub>-, wherein T^4 is O, S, NR<sup>3</sup> or -Z-C(=X)-Y<sup>1</sup>-,
39
40
                    said Y being O, S or NR<sup>3</sup>, thus preparing a compound of
41
                    formula L^1-C_rH_{2r}-T^4-C_gH_{2g}-D (I-b-2);
42
         b) reductively N-alkylating a compound of formula H-D, (I-c-1),
43
              with a carbonyl-compound of formula L<sup>2-a</sup>=C=O (VIII), said
44
             L^{2-a}=C=0 being a compound of formula L^2-H wherein a -CH_2-CH_2
45
             radical is oxidated to a carbonyl radical, in a reaction-inert
46
              solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula L^2-D (I-b);
         c) reductively N-alkylating a compound of formula
48
                              HN(R^3)-C_gH_{2g}-D (I-d)
49
             with a carbonyl-compound of formula L^{1}-(C_{r}H_{2r-1})=0 (IX),
50
             said L<sup>1</sup>-(C<sub>H</sub>)=O being a compound of formula
51
             L1-C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r</sub>-H wherein a -CH<sub>2</sub>- radical is oxidated to a
52
             carbonyl radical, in a reaction inert solvent, thus preparing a
53
             compound of formula L^1-C_rH_{2r}-N(R^3)-C_sH_{2s}-D (I-b-3);
54
         d) reductively N-alkylating an intermediate of formula
55
             L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-N(R^{3})H (X) with a compound of formula O=(C_{s}H_{2s-1})-D
56
             (I-e), said O=(C_8H_{2s-1})- being a radical of formula H-C_8H_{2s}-
57
             wherein a -CH2- radical is oxidated to a carbonyl radical, in a
58
             reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula (I-b-3);
```

85  $L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-C(=X^{2})-N$  D (1-b-6-c); 86

BNSDOCID: <EP\_\_\_0151826A1\_I\_>

87

88

89

9D

91

93 
$$L^{1}-C_{r}H_{2r}-Z^{1}-C(=X)-N$$
 D (I-b-7-c);  
94

i) reacting an alkene of formula L1-C H -T-lower alkenediyl-H 95 of formula (XIV) with (I-c-1) in a reaction-inert solvent, thus 96

preparing a compound of formula 97

L<sup>1</sup>-C<sub>r</sub>H<sub>2r</sub>-T-lower alkanediyl-D, (I-g); 98

99 j) reacting a reagent of formula

102 
$$L^{1-C}r^{H}2r^{-T-C}s'-2^{H}2s'-4^{-CH-CH}2^{-D}$$
 (I-h), wherein  $Y^{1}H$ 

103 wherein s' is an integer of from 2 to 6 inclusive;

104 k) cyclizing an imidamide of formula

106 in a reaction-inert solvent in the presence of an acid, thus

107 preparing a compound of formula

and  $\mathbb{R}^{23}$  are, each independently, optional substituents of the 109

110 imidazole ring;

1) condensing a ketone of formula  $R^{24}$ -CH(W)-C(=0)- $R^{25}$ , (XVII), 111

with a thioamide of formula  $H_2N-C(=S)-K-D$ , (XVIII), in a 112

113 reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

114 
$$R^{24}$$
 S  $K-D$  (I-i-2), wherein  $R^{24}$  and

 ${
m R}^{25}$  are, each independently, optional substituents of the 115 thiazole ring, or where in the compound of formula (I-i-2) said 116 thiazolyl ring is condensed with a five- or six-membered hetero-117 or carbocyclic ring,  $R^{24}$  and  $R^{25}$  taken together may form a 118 radical of formula G3; 119 m) condensing a thioamide of formula  $R^{26}$ -C(=S)NH<sub>2</sub>, (XIX), with 120 a ketone of formula W-CHR<sup>27</sup>-(C=O)-K-D, (XX), in a reaction-121 inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula 122

123 
$$\mathbb{R}^{26}$$
  $\mathbb{S}$   $\mathbb{R}^{27}$   $\mathbb{R}^{27}$  (I-i-3), wherein  $\mathbb{R}^{26}$  and

124 R<sup>27</sup> are, each independently, optional substituents of the 125 thiazolyl ring;

126 n) reacting an amide or thioamide of formula

127 
$$G^{1} \downarrow_{NH}^{R^{11}}$$

$$C-NH-K-D$$

$$X^{2}$$

generating agent, in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

130 o) cyclizing a urea or thiourea of formula

which in situ may be generated by reacting a reagent

132

$$G^{1}$$
 $N=C=X^{2}$ 

(XXIII), with an amine  $X^{1}$ 

H<sub>2</sub>N-K-D, (XXIV), in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

135 
$$G^{1} \xrightarrow{N} X^{2} \times X^{2}$$

136 p) condensing an aniline of formula

with an acid of formula R<sup>12</sup>COOH (XXVI), or a reactive
derivative thereof, in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing
a compound of formula

141 q) condensing an aniline of formula

of formula R<sup>12</sup>-C(=0)-NH-K-D (XXVIII) in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula (I-i-5); r) condensing an aniline of formula

with an acetylene of formula CH=C-R<sup>14</sup> (XXX), in a reactioninert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

s) condensing (XXIX) with a ketone of formula R<sup>14</sup>-C(=0)-R<sup>15</sup>

(XXXI), in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

151 t) condensing a reagent of formula

with a ketone of formula W-CH(R<sup>16</sup>)-C(=0)-K-D (XXXIII), in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

$$G^2$$
 $N$ 
 $R^{-D}$ 
 $R^{16}$ 
(I-i-8);

154 u) condensing an amine of formula

with CS<sub>2</sub>, in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

v) reacting a reagent of formula R<sup>19</sup>-C(=NH)-W (XXXV) with an amine of formula

in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

160 w) cyclodesulfurizing a thioamide of formula

with an appropriate alkyl halide, metal oxide or metal salt in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

163 x) condensing an amine of formula

with a C=X<sup>2</sup> generating agent, in a reaction-inert solvent, thus preparing a compound of formula

166 wherein K is a bivalent radical of formula

169 wherein D represents a radical of formula

$$-N \xrightarrow{\mathbb{R}^2} \mathbb{R}^{1} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{R}^1} \mathbb{A}^{2} \quad \text{, and} \quad \mathbb{R}^{1} \xrightarrow{\mathbb{R}^3} \mathbb{R}^{2}$$

170 R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>12</sup>, R<sup>13</sup>, R<sup>14</sup>, R<sup>15</sup>, R<sup>16</sup>, R<sup>17</sup>, R<sup>18</sup>, R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are, each
171 independently optional substituents of the previously described
172 bicyclic radicals and G<sup>1</sup>, G<sup>2</sup>, G<sup>3</sup>, G<sup>4</sup> and G<sup>5</sup> are, each independently,
173 optionally substituted bivalent radicals, selected so that they form,
174 combined with the five- or six-membered heterocycle to which they are
175 attached, a bicyclic Het-system; or optionally converting the
176 compounds of formula (I) into each other following art-known
177 grouptransformation procedures, and, if desired, converting the
178 compounds of formula (I) into a therapeutically active non-toxic
179 acid-addition salt form by treatment with an appropriate acid or,
180 conversely, converting the acid-addition salt into the free base form
181 with alkali; and/or preparing stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.



# **EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT**

	DOCUMENTS CON	SIDERED TO BE RELEVA	ANT	EP 84201851.7
Category	Citation of document w of rel	with indication, where appropriate, evant passages	Relevant to claim	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int. CI 4)
D,A	* Column 1 3, lines	9 559 (JANSSENS) , formula I; colum 24-39; column 11, -65; column 12, -35 *	1,5-10	C 07 D 401/06 C 07 D 401/12 C 07 D 401/14 C 07 D 405/14 C 07 D 409/14
A		O 857 (HEXACHIMIE) lines 1-44; claim	1,5-8,	C 07 D 417/14 C 07 D 513/04 C 07 D 519/00 C 07 D 487/04 C 07 D 473/00 C 07 D 473/34 A 61 K 31/44
A	US - A - 2 857	7 391 (ENGELHARDT)	1,5	
	* Column 1, 58-60 *	lines 23-30,		
A	CHEMICAL ABSTR 9, March 1, 19 USA	ACTS, vol. 96, no 982, Columbus, Ohio	1,5	TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int. CI.4)
	compounds usef stomach acid s page 613, colu 68 986p	Heterocyclic ful for inducing secretion" mn 1, abstract no		C 07 D 471/00 C 07 D 401/00 C 07 D 405/00 C 07 D 409/00 C 07 D 417/00 C 07 D 513/00
A	MANNHEIM)	26 (BOEHRINGER	1,5-8	C 07 D 519/00 C 07 D 487/00 C 07 D 473/00
		···		-
<u> </u>	The present search report has b	peen drawn up for all claims	-	
MATTERNA		Date of completion of the search	,	Examiner
		10-04-1985		ONDER
Y: parti docu A: tech O: non-	CATEGORY OF CITED DOCL cularly relevant if taken alone cularly relevant if combined w iment of the same category nological background written disclosure mediate document	JMENTS T: theory of E: earlier properties after the distribution of the community of the co	atent document, filing date nt cited in the ap nt cited for other	lying the invention but published on, or

# **EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT**

	DOCUMENTS CONS	IDEKED TO BE K	ELEVANT	l	EP 84201851.
ategory		th indication, where appropri rant passages	rate,	Relevant to claim	CLASSIFICATION OF THE APPLICATION (Int. CI 4)
A	EP - B1 - O O49 POULENC)			1,5-8	
	Page 2, for lines 43-4	ormula I; pag 45 *	e 3,		
					TECHNICAL FIELDS
l					SEARCHED (Int. CI.4)
ļ					_
			·		
	·		į		
1		•			
Ì	•	•			
		•			
	The present search report has I	Deen drawn up for all claims			
Place of search		Date of completion of			Examiner
	VIENNA	10-04-198			ONDER
Y: par	CATEGORY OF CITED DOCI ticularly relevant if taken alone ticularly relevant if combined vour- urnent of the same category hnological background hwritten disclosure	vith another D	<ul> <li>earlier pate</li> <li>after the fili</li> <li>document o</li> <li>document o</li> </ul>	nt document, ng date sited in the ap sited for other	lying the invention but published on, or plication reasons ant family, corresponding

